|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **UNIT 1. LEISURE TIME**  **I. VOCABULARY** | | | |
| **Word** | **Type** | **Pronunciation** | **Meaning** |
| **balance** | n | **ˈbæləns/** | sự cân bằng, sự thăng bằng |
| **Ex:** The **balance** is very important in our life. *Sự cân bằng là rất quan trọng trong cuộc sống của chúng ta.* | | | |
| **bracelet** | n | **/ˈbreɪslət/** | vòng đeo tay |
| **Ex:** She likes this **bracelet** so much. *Cô ấy rất thích chiếc vòng đeo tay này.* | | | |
| **crazy** | adj | **/ˈkreɪzi/** | rất thích, quá đam mê |
| **Ex:** He is quite **crazy** on this robot. *Anh ta rất thích con rô-bốt này.* | | | |
| **cruel** | adj | **/ˈkruːəl/** | độc ác |
| **Ex:** In this situation, she is very **cruel**. *Trong tình huống này, cô ấy đã rất độc ác.* | | | |
| **detest** | v | **/dɪˈtest/** | căm ghét |
| **Ex:** She **detests** doing housework. *Cô ấy rất ghét làm việc nhà.* | | | |
| **DIY (do-it-yourself)** | n | **/ˌdiː aɪ ˈwaɪ/** | hoạt động tự làm ra, sửa chữa hoặc trang trí đồ vật trong nhà |
| **Ex:** His favourite leisure activity is **DIY**. *Hoạt động ưa thích trong giờ rảnh rỗi của anh ấy là tự trang trí đồ vật trong nhà.* | | | |
| **fancy** | v | **/ˈfænsi/** | mến, thích |
| **Ex:** They **fancy** dancing and listening to music. *Họ thích nhảy và nghe nhạc.* | | | |
| **fold** | v | **/fəʊld/** | gấp, gập |
| **Ex:** She spends two hours **folding** paper every day. Cô ấ*y dành hai tiếng đồng hồ mỗi ngày để gấp giấy.* | | | |
| **fond** | adj | **/fɒnd/** | mến, thích |
| **Ex:** They are **fond** of performing folk dances. *Họ thích biểu diễn các điệu nhảy dân gian.* | | | |
| **keen** | adj | **/kiːn/** | say mê, ham thích |
| **Ex:** Jenny is **keen** on drawing the portrait. *Jenny rất thích vẽ tranh chân dung.* | | | |
| **keep in touch** | v | **/kiːp ɪn tʌtʃ/** | giữ liên lạc với |
| **Ex:** We always **keep in touch** together although we are away together. *Chúng tôi luôn giữ liên lạc với nhau mặc dù chúng tôi ở xa nhau.* | | | |
| **kit** | n | **/kɪt/** | bộ đồ nghề |
| **Ex:** He wants to find a craft **kit**. *Anh ta muon tìm 1 bộ đồ nghề thủ công.* | | | |
| **leisure time** | n | **/ˈleʒə(r) taɪm/** | thời gian rảnh rỗi |
| **Ex:** He always helps the homeless people in his **leisure time**. *Anh ta luôn giúp đỡ những người vô gia cư trong thời gian rảnh rỗi của anh ấy.* | | | |
| **message** | v | **/ˈmesɪdʒ/** | gửi tin nhắn |
| **Ex:** They always **message** about their situation together. *Họ luôn gửi tin nhắn về tình hình của họ cho nhau biết.* | | | |
| **muscle** | n | **/ˈmʌsl/** | cơ bắp |
| **Ex:** They always do exercise to develop their **muscle**. *Họ luôn tập thể dục để phát triển cơ bắp của họ.* | | | |
| **origami** | n | **/ˌɒrɪˈɡɑːmi/** | nghệ thuật gấp giấy Nhật Bản |
| **Ex:** Mary often spends her free time practising **origami**. *Mary thường xuyên dành thời giản rảnh của cô ấy luyện gấp giấy.* | | | |
| **outdoor** | adj | **/ˌaʊtˈdɔːr/** | ngoài trời |
| ***Ex:*** Tom and Peter always play **outdoor** sports. *Tom và Peter luôn luôn chơi các môn thể thao ngoài trời.* | | | |
| **prefer** | v | **/prɪˈfɜːr/** | thích hơn |
| ***Ex:*** They **prefer** folk dances. *Họ thích các điệu nhảy dân gian hơn.* | | | |
| **puzzle** | n | **/ˈpʌzl/** | trò chơi câu đố, giải đố |
| ***Ex:*** Her students always play **puzzle** games at break time. *Học sinh của cô ấy thường chơi trò giải đố trong giờ nghi giải lao.* | | | |
| **resort** | n | **/rɪˈzɔːt/** | khu nghỉ dưỡng |
| ***Ex:*** Their parents spent their holiday in Ninh Binh **resort**. *Bố mẹ họ đã dành thời gian nghỉ của họ tại khu nghỉ dưỡng Ninh Bình.* | | | |
| **snowboarding** | n | **/ˈsnəʊbɔːdɪŋ/** | sự trượt tuyết bằng ván |
| ***Ex:*** He likes **snowboarding** in the winter. *Anh ta thích trượt tuyết vào mùa đông.* | | | |
| **stay in shape** | v | **/steɪ ɪn ʃeɪp/** | giữ dáng |
| ***Ex:*** Nowadays, almost girls want to **stay in shape**. *Ngày nay, hầu hết các cô gái đều muốn giữ dáng.* | | | |

**II. WORD FORM**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Word** | **Related words** | **Transcription** | **Meaning** |
| **adore (v)**  yêu thích, say mê | adorable (adj) | /əˈdɔːrəbl/ | đáng yêu, đáng quý mến |
| adorably (adv) | /əˈdɔːrəbli/ | đáng mến, đáng yêu |
| adoration (n) | /ˌædəˈreɪʃn/ | sự kính yêu, quý mến |
| **addicted (adj)**  nghiện | addict (n) | /ˈædɪkt/ | người nghiện, người say mê cái gì đó |
| addiction (n) | /əˈdɪkʃn/ | thói nghiện |
| addictive (adj) | /ˈædətɪv/ | có thể gây nghiện |
| **crazy (adj)**  rất thích, quá đam mê | craziness (n) | /ˈkreɪzinəs/ | sự say mê, sự điên dại |
| crazily (adv) | /ˈkreɪzɪli/ | một cách say mê, điên cuồng |
| **communicate (v)**  giao tiếp | communication (n) | /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/ | sự giao tiếp |
| communicative (adj) | /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪtɪv/ | dễ lan truyền, cởi mở, dễ giao tiếp |
| communicant (n) | /kəˈmjuːnɪkənt/ | người truyền tin, người đưa tin |
| **prefer (v)**  thích hơn | preferable (adj) | /ˈprefrəbl/ | thích hơn, được ưa chuộng hơn |
| preferably (adv) | /ˈprefrəbli/ | tốt nhất là |
| preference (n) | /ˈprefrəns/ | sở thích, sự ưa thích hơn |
| **satisfied (adj)**  hài lòng | satisfy (v) | /ˈsætɪsfaɪ/ | làm hài lòng, làm thỏa mãn |
| satisfactory (adj) | /ˌsætɪsˈfæktəri/ | vừa ý, thoả đáng |
| satisfaction | /ˌsætɪsˈfækʃn/ | sự thoả mãn, sự toại nguyện |
| **snowboarding (n)**  trượt tuyết bằng ván | snowboard (n) | ˈsnəʊbɔːrd/ | cái ván trượt |
| snowboarder (n) | /ˈsnəʊbɔːrdər/ | người trượt ván |
| **socialise (v)**  giao tiếp để tạo mối quan hệ | socialization (n) | /ˌsəʊʃələˈzeɪʃn/ | xã hội hoá |
| socialite (n) | /ˈsəʊʃəlaɪt/ | người có vai vế trong xã hội, người giao thiệp rộng |
| socialist (n) | /ˈsəʊʃəlɪst/ | người theo chủ nghĩa xã hội |

**III. GRAMMAR**

**1. Verbs of liking - các động từ chỉ sở thích**

**Dưới đây là một số động từ chỉ sở thích, xếp theo mức độ yêu thích giảm dần.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| ❶ Adore (v): yêu thích, say mê | ❺ Dislike/ don't like (v): không thích |
| ❷ Love (v): yêu | ❻ Hate (v): ghét |
| ❸ Like/ enjoy/ fancy (v): thích | ❼ Detest (v): ghét cay ghét đắng |
| ❹ Don't mind (v): không phiền |  |

**2. Verbs of liking + Ving - các động từ chỉ sở thích theo sau bởi Ving.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Verbs of liking** | **Examples** |
| Adore | My sister adores dancing. *(Chị gái tôi say mê khiêu vũ.)* |
| Enjoy | Do you enjoy listening to music? *(Cậu có thích nghe nhạc không?)* |
| Fancy | She fancies doing the gardening. *(Cô ấy yêu thích làm vườn.)* |
| Don't mind | I don't mind cleaning. *(Tôi không ngại lau dọn.)* |
| Detest | I detest staying at home alone. *(Tôi cực kỳ ghét ở nhà một mình.)* |

**3. Verbs of liking Ving/ to Vinf - Động từ theo sau bởi cả Ving và to Vinf.**

**- Like:**

***Ex:*** He likes reading books/ He likes to read books.

*(Anh ấy thích đọc sách.)*

**- Love:**

***Ex:*** I love walking to school/I love to walk to school.

*(Tôi thích đi bộ tới trường.)*

**- Hate:**

***Ex:*** I hate eating out/I hate to eat out.

*(Tôi ghét đi ăn ngoài hàng.)*

**- Prefer:**

***Ex:*** I prefer going to cinema/I prefer to go to the cinema.

*(Tôi thích đi xem phim hơn.)*

**4. References - một số cấu trúc khác nói về sở thích**

- Một số cấu trúc mà người bản ngữ thường dùng khi nói thích một điểu gì đó thay vì lặp đi lặp lại I like/I love.

**🟂 To be quite into+ Ving/something:**thích làm gì/cái gì

***Ex:*** I am quite into playing football - I get very excited about it.

*(Tôi khá thích chơi đá bóng - Tôi rất hào hứng về nó.)*

**🟂 To be a big fan of + Ving/ something:**là fan hâm mộ của ai

***Ex:*** I am a big fan of horror movies.

*(Tôi là fan cuồng hâm mộ phim kinh dị.)*

**🟂 To be interested in + Ving:**quan tâm, yêu thích làm gì

***Ex:*** I am interested in taking photos.

*(Tôi thích chụp ảnh.)*

**🟂 To be addicted to + Ving:**nghiện/ say mê cái gì, làm gì

***Ex:*** He is addicted to playing computer games.

*(Anh ta nghiện chơi trò chơi điện tử.)*

**🟂 To be hooked on something/Ving something:**bị mê hoặc bởi thứ gì

***Ex:*** She is hooked on going shopping. She goes shopping every day.

*(Cô ấy bị mê hoặc bởi việc mua sắm. Cô ấy đi mua sắm mỗi ngày.)*

**🟂 To be keen on Ving/something:**say mê, yêu thích điều gì

***Ex:*** She is keen on doing DIY.

*(Cô ấy yêu thích làm các công việc tự sửa chữa.)*

**IV. PRONUNCIATION**

**Sound /u:/ and /**ʊ**/**

**1. Nguyên âm dài /u:/**

**a. Cách phát âm**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - Môi mở tròn, hướng ra ngoài.  - Mặt lưỡi đưa sâu vào trong khoang miệng. Phía cuống lưỡi cong, đưa lên cao gần ngạc trên.  - /u:/ là nguyên âm dài. Dây thanh rung, luồng hơi đi từ phía trong miệng ra tự do không bị cản, có thể kéo dài. | https://lh6.googleusercontent.com/vwlft4SB0_qDRemj_APgDHtoKZB09KQ26BftqibQl5_EFvewEQCzJoH1wP-HkA7eLYRTSCCrPmlc4STfSYDbhMhXtdaTzaxPnSw5aV88vL_OK6FTZDKa9qLkTByGlklhBQ1dYwMcUdQ6EZ77138blg=s800 |

**• Các em tập phát âm các ví dụ sau:**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| shoe | /ʃu:/ | giày |
| blue | /blu:/ | màu xanh lam |
| too | /tu:/ | cũng |
| fool | /fu:l/ | ngớ ngẩn |
| pool | /pu:l/ | ao, bể bơi |
| choose | /tʃu:z/ | chọn |
| two | /tu:/ | số hai |
| you | /ju:/ | bạn |

**b. Dấu hiệu nhận biết âm /u:/**

**✔ Dấu hiệu 1:**“o” được phát âm là /u:/ trong một vài từ thông dụng có tận cùng bằng o hoặc o + phụ âm.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| d**o** | /du:/ | làm |
| m**o**ve | /mu:v/ | cử động |
| l**o**se | /lu:z/ | mất, đánh mất |
| pr**o**ve | /pru:v/ | chứng minh |
| t**o**mb | /tu:m/ | mộ, mồ |
| rem**o**ve | /rɪ'mu:v/ | xóa bỏ, loại bỏ |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 2:**“u” được phát âm là /u:/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| bl**u**e | /blu:/ | màu xanh lam |
| fl**u**te | /flu:t/ | ống sáo |
| br**u**tal | /bru:tl/ | thô bạo, dã man |
| l**u**nar | /ˈluːnər/ | thuộc về Mặt trăng |
| sal**u**te✔ | /sə’lu:t/ | sự chào mừng |
| l**u**nacy | /'lu:nəsɪ/ | sự điên rồ |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 3:**“oo” được phát âm là /u:/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| f**oo**d | /fu:d/ | đồ ăn, thực phẩm |
| t**oo** | /tu:/ | cũng |
| p**oo**l | /pu:l/ | bể bơi |
| t**oo**l | /tu:l/ | đồ dùng |
| t**oo**th | /tuːθ/ | cái răng |
| g**oo**se | /gu:s/ | con ngỗng |
| sp**oo**n | /spu:n/ | cái thìa |
| bamb**oo** | /ˌbæmˈbuː/ | cây tre |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 4:**“ou” được phát âm là / u:/ trong một số trường hợp

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| gr**ou**p | /gru:p/ | một nhóm, một đám |
| tr**ou**pe | /tru:p/ | gánh hát |
| d**ou**che | /du:ʃ/ | vòi hoa sen |
| w**ou**nded | /’wu:ndɪd/ | bị thương |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 5.**“ui” được phát âm là / u:/ trong một số trường hợp

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| br**ui**se | /bru:z/ | vết thương, vết bầm tím da |
| br**ui**t | /bru:t/ | tin đồn, tiếng đồn |
| fr**ui**t | /fru:t/ | trái cây |
| j**ui**ce | /dʒuːs/ | nước cốt, nước trái cây |
| cr**ui**se | /kru:z/ | cuộc đi chơi trên biển |
| cr**ui**ser | /ˈkruːzər/ | tàu tuần dương |
| recr**ui**t | /rɪ'kru:t/ | mộ binh, tuyển lính |

***Ngoại lệ:***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| fl**u**id | /'flu: ɪd/ | chất lỏng, lỏng |
| r**u**in | /'ru: ɪn/ | sự đổ nát, vết tích đổ nát |

**2. Nguyên âm ngắn**/ʊ/

**a. Cách phát âm**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - Môi mở khá tròn, hướng ra ngoài, bè hơn so với âm /u:/  - Mặt lưỡi đưa khá sâu vào trong khoang miệng, không sâu bằng âm /u:/. Phía cuống lưỡi cong, đưa lên cao gần ngạc trên, thấp hơn âm /u:/ một chút  - Nguyên âm ngắn. Dây thanh rung, luồng hơi đi từ phía trong miệng ra tự do không bị cản. | https://lh5.googleusercontent.com/xp6v9QLWBiouu9g4y_9wKkPA81lUXl-bIi9GE8HJc9NS_XJ8JtiMze8FzJvupReO4RHBYjWdE_I4cGbNzzGyHHz9TFlnRjWPu1nw7WoBN9mXIHeOOFlPFQ_IuaaQ4m5U-E42Y-E9dhHlkOXqrwfJ3g=s800 |

**• Các em tập phát âm các ví dụ sau:**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| sugar | /ˈʃʊɡər/ | /'jo gar/ |
| woman | /'wʊmən/ | /'woman/ |
| should | /ʃʊd/ | /Jbd/ |
| good | /gʊd/ | /god/ |
| wolf | /wʊlf/ | /wolf/ |
| foot | /fʊt/ | /fot/ |
| cushion | /'kʊʃn/ | /'kojh/ |
| put | /pʊt/ | /pot/ |

**Dấu hiệu 1:**“o” được phát âm là /ʊ/.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| w**o**lf | /wʊlf/ | chó sói |
| w**o**man | /'wʊman/ | phụ nữ |

**Dấu hiệu 2:**“oo” được phát âm là /ʊ/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| book | /bʊk/ | sách |
| good | /gʊd/ | tốt |
| look | /lʊk/ | nhìn |
| wool | /wʊl/ | len |
| cook | /kʊk/ | nấu ăn |
| foot | /fʊt/ | chân |
| wood | /wʊd/ | gỗ |
| took | /tʊk/ | quá khứ của take |

**Dấu hiệu 3:**“ou” được phát âm là /ʊ/.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| c**ou**ld | /kʊd/ | có thể |
| sh**ou**ld | /ʃʊd/ | phải, nên |
| w**ou**ld | /wʊd/ | sẽ, muốn |

**V. PRACTICE**

**Exercise 1a. Use single underline with the word containing /u:/ sound and double underline with the word containing /ʊ/ sound.**

1. He put salt into the sugar bowl by mistake.

2. She injured her foot while playing soccer.

3. He can prove his innocence with the evidence.

4. We can remove the stain from the carpet using a cleaner.

5. I could swim when I was a child, but now I've lost my confidence in the water.

6. You should eat your vegetables to stay healthy.

7. The sky can turn blue during a clear day.

8. They can’t eat spicy food because of allergies.

9. She can wiggle her loose tooth with her tongue.

10. He can't eat citrus fruit because of a medical condition.

**Exercise 1b. Read the sentences in Exercise 1a aloud and pay attention to the sound /u:/ and /ʊ/.**

**Exercise 2. Divide the words into two columns depending on the pronunciation: /ʊ/ or /u:/.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| do | wolf | woman | book | move | good | lose | look |
| prove | wool | blue | cook | flute | brutal | foot | lunar |
| food | too | pool | wood | tool | group | took | troupe |
| douche | could | wounded | bruise | bruit | should | fruit | juice |
|  | | | | | | | |
| **/u:/** | | | | **/ʊ/** | | | |
|  | |  | |  | |  | |

**Exercise 3. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **paper** | **together** | **keep** | **free time** | **socialize** |
| **in shape** | **activity** | **drawing** | **spend** | **balance** |

1. The \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ between life and work is very important.

2. His favourite leisure \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is DIY.

3. She spends two hours folding \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ every day.

4. They're content to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with a very small circle of people.

5. Jenny is keen on \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the portrait.

6. We always \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in touch together although we are away together.

7. They always message about their situation \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

8. Mary often spends her \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ practising origami.

9. Their parents \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ their holiday in Ninh Binh resort.

10. Nowadays, almost girls want to stay \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 4. Look at the photos and put the correct words/ phrases under them.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **playing games** | **making crafts** | **watching TV** | **reading books** | |
| **playing chess** | **playing sports** | **texting** | **hanging out with friends** | |
| 920+ Girl Texting Cartoons Stock Photos, Pictures & Royalty-Free Images -  iStock | A boy sitting and reading a book. Vector EPS8 file. Stock Vector | Adobe  Stock | Cartoon little boy playing video game 8734680 Vector Art at Vecteezy | | Sport Cartoon Images - Free Download on Freepik |
| 1. | 2. | 3. | | 4. |
| Premium Vector | Cartoon character playing chess game | Premium Vector | Vector illustration of kid watching tv | Coffee With Friends Clipart - Clipart Suggest | | Art Craft Cartoon Images: Browse 104,309 Stock Photos & Vectors Free  Download with Trial | Shutterstock |
| 5. | 6. | 7. | | 8. |

**Exercise 5. Put the nouns into the correct columns.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **origami** | | **magazines** | | **movies** | | **DIY** | |
| **computer games** | | **sports** | | **crafts** | | **cakes** | |
| **the Internet** | | **badminton** | | **waves** | | **books** | |
| **novels** | | **crafts** | | **TV** | | **sports** | |
|  | | | | | | | |
| **do** | **watch** | | **play** | **surf** | **read** | | **make** |
|  |  | |  |  |  | |  |

**Exercise 6. Put the words/ phrase into the correct category.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| a comedy, a skill, hanging out, going to the gym, aerobics, collecting books, the news, visiting relatives, a book, a language, a poem judo, chatting, making crafts, the newspaper, having meals together, gardening, a musical instrument, skating, a drama, visiting museums, going to a fashion show, doing DIY projects, volleyball, texting, a game show | |
| **1. Going to an event/ place** |  |
| **2. Having hobbies** |  |
| **3. Learning something** |  |
| **4. Playing sports** |  |
| **5. Reading** |  |
| **6. Socializing with friends** |  |
| **7. Spending time with family** |  |
| **8. Watching TV** |  |

**Exercise 7. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box. Remember to put it in the correct form.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **rely** | **socialize** | **adore** | **write** |
| **hang out** | **read** | **detest** | **surf** |

1. My brother likes \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the Internet looking for new music.

2. I dislike \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ too much on other people. I want to be independent.

3. Josh enjoys \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with his classmates after school.

4. My sister and I fancy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ novels when we have free time.

5. He's very artistic. He enjoys \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ poems in his free time.

6. James \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ talking with his neighbors because he finds them annoying.

7. My uncle loves \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with other people. He has many friends.

8. Ann \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ working with children. She's a teacher.

**Exercise 8. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

1. The Internet is very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, it takes up a lot of our time. (addict)

2. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with friends and going out at the weekend. (social)

3. Sitting in front of the computer too long can cause \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. (obese)

4. Are you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ about the new Gears of War games? (excite)

5. She listens to classical music for \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. (relax)

6. The Internet has changed the English language \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. (consider)

7. She was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with her job and decided to look for a new one. (satisfy)

8. Face to face \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is better than video calls. (communicate)

**Exercise 9. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. My mother likes (cook) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ when she is free.

2. I am a little busy. Would you mind (wait) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a little longer?

3. I have enjoyed (meet) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you. Hope (see) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you again soon.

4. Linda wants (learn) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Vietnamese because she is interested in (visit) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Viet Nam.

5. Tonight I'd like (go) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ out, but I have to do my homework.

6. My brother enjoys (visit) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the zoo.

7. I hate (tell) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ lies because it's very bad.

8. Mobile games are great, but I don't like (play) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ them for too long.

9. He started (surf) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the net hours ago. Has he stopped (surf) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ yet?

10. John detests (drink) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ beer.

11. Do you like (listen) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to music?

12. Does Anna fancy (watch) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ horrible movies?

13. I prefer (make) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ crafts to (draw) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a picture.

14. Kate loves (hang out) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with her friends on her birthday.

15. I detest (eat) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ fish.

**Exercise 10. Choose the correct answer among A, B, C, D.**

1. Does she fancy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a book to the younger children?

A. reads                 B. reading                C. to read                D. read

2. They enjoy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on Sundays.

A. garden                 B. gardening                C. gardened                D. gardens

3. They love \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with their friends.

A. eating out                 B. ate out                C. having eaten        D. to eating out

4. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ people.

A. text                         B. texting                C. texted                D. texts

5. They detest \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ so early in the morning.

A. getting up                 B. get up                C. to get up                D. gets up

6. How much time do you spend \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ TV every day?

A. watch                 B. to watch                C. watching                D. in watching

7. I'd hate \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the exams, so I'm doing my best.

A. failing                B. to fail                C. fail                        D. failed

8. I always enjoy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to my grandfather. He always tells me great stories.

A. to talk                 B. to talking                C. talking                D. talk

9. Could you help me \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen? It's a real mess!

A. tidy                         B. tidied                C. tidying                D. on tidying

10. Steven dislikes \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, so he usually takes a bus to work.

A. drive                 B. to be driven         C. be driven                 D. driving

11. Jane prefers \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ an instrument to listening to music.

A. playing                 B. play                         C. to play                 D. played

12. Marlene can't wait \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the beach again.

A. to go                 B. going                 C. for going                 D. go

13. I really regret \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ this computer - It's useless.

A. buy                         B. to buy                 C. buying                 D. for buying

14. Your child needs \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ some weight. Tell him \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ less junk food and more exercise.

A. to lose - eat         B. to lose - to eat         C. losing - to eat         D. losing - eat

15. I would love \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to         your party! Thank you for inviting me.

A. come                 B. coming                 C. to come                 D. came

16. Mai enjoys \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to music, especially pop music in her free time.

A. hearing                 B. playing                C. listening                 D. talking

17. My grandparents love \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ very much. There are a lot of beautiful flowers and fresh vegetables in their garden.

A. doing garden                                 B. doing gardening

C. do gardening                                 D. to do garden

18. You should avoid \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ too much TV. It's not good for your eyes.

A. seeing                 B. looking                 C. watching                 D. glancing

19. Nga likes \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with her close friend on Saturday evenings.

A. window shop         B. window to shop        C. window shops         D. window shopping

20. Lan used to love \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in front of the computer for hours but now she doesn't. She takes part in a judo club.

A. using                 B. sitting                 C. doing                 D. having

**Exercise 11. Choose the underlined part A, B, C or D that needs correcting.**

1. Having leisure activities are truly important to the elderly.

A. Having                B. are                        C. to                        D. elderly

2. Although she wanted to go to the museum, she decided staying at home.

A. Although                B. wanted to go        C. decided                D. staying

3. Parents are concerned that their kids may be spending too many time on screens.

A. concerned                B. spending                C. too many                D. on screens

4. Collecting coins is exciting, but it can also be relaxed.

A. Collecting                B. is                        C. exciting                D. relaxed

5. Cloud watching sound weird, but Hang adores it.

A. Cloud watching        B. sound                C. but                        D. it

6. For some young people, enjoyment involves sitting in front a computer playing games.

A. For some                B. involves                C. in front                D. playing games

7. His parents are thinking of banning him on using the computer.

A. thinking                 B. banning                C. on                        D. using

8. When you play games online, be carefully when making friends with strangers.

A. games                B. carefully                C. making                D. with

**Exercise 12. Read the following text about jogging and answer the questions.**

**Jogging**

Jogging not only is a popular outdoor leisure activity but also a daily exercise bringing us health benefits. First, jogging is good for your circulatory. Many studies have shown that those who jog regularly have healthier hearts than those who don't. This means they seldom get diseases involved in the heart. Second, jogging is great for those who want to lose weight. When you jog, your body will use a great number of calories for this activity. This means jogging helps to bum fat stored in your body, especially belly fat. Third, jogging is effective to increase the weight on bones, especially on feet and legs. It means it helps strengthen the bones to carry your body weight easily. Jogging also helps muscles stronger. Also, jogging might prevent us from catching a cold often. Some researchers have found that it helps to strengthen the immune system in the body. So, if we invest time in jogging every day, we could easily avoid colds and flu. In short, we should do this activity every day to improve our health.

1. Who have healthier hearts, those who jog regularly or those who don’t?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. How does jogging help you to reduce your weight?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. What is ideal for increasing the bones' weight?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. Why might jogging prevent us from catching a cold often?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. What should we do to improve our health every day?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 13. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks.**

The British spend their free time in different ways. People generally use it to relax, but many people also do voluntary work, especially for charities.

A lot of free time is spent at home, where the most popular leisure activity is watching television, with the average viewing time being 25 hours per week. Reading is also a favorite way of spending leisure time. The British spend a lot of time reading newspapers and magazines. In the summer gardening is popular, and it is often replaced by ‘do-it-yourself’ in winter when people spend time improving or repairing their homes.

Some leisure activities are mostly or entirely social. Inviting friends for a drink or a meal at home is the most usual one. Sometimes people join friends for a drink in a pub or have dinner in a restaurant.

The extra time available at weekends means that some leisure activities, many of them to do with sport, normally take place only then. Traditional spectator sports include football, cricket, horse racing, motor racing, and motorcycle racing. Popular forms of exercise are swimming, tennis, ice skating or roller-skating, cycling, climbing, and hill or country walking.

Families often have a 'day out' at the weekend, especially in summer, with a visit to a local event such as a festival, fair, or show. Young people especially go to clubs and discos, while people of all ages go to the theatre, the cinema, art exhibitions, and concerts.

**A. Decide whether the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **No.** | **Statements** | **T or F** |
| 1. | Many British people use their free time to help people in need. |  |
| 2. | In the summer, the British prefer indoor activities. |  |
| 3. | All free time activities are individual activities. |  |
| 4. | Most British people watch or do sports at the weekend. |  |
| 5. | Sometimes people go with their friends to a pub or a restaurant. |  |
| 6. | British young people don't like going to the movies. |  |

**B. Answer the questions.**

1. What's the most popular free time activity in the UK?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. How many hours a week do the British watch TV?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. In winter, what do the British often do in their spare time?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. Which sports do many British people enjoy watching?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 14. Using the organizing ideas clues to reorder the recipe to make a pancake.**

**How to Make a Pancake**

A. Firstly, mix the batter ingredients with a whisk until smooth and lump free.

B. Remember, don't add too much batter if you want the pancakes to be nice and thin.

C. Next, pour about half a spoon of batter into the pan and swirl around as soon as the batter hits the pan, this will distribute the mix evenly.

D. Yum! It's time for a special breakfast! Or perhaps you want to surprise a special someone. What could be easier, yummier, and more fun with pancakes?

E. Secondly, put a non-stick frying pan on the heat and add a small amount of oil.

F. To cook the other side either, flip it over and leave it for another 30 seconds or so to finish cooking.

G. Then, leave the pancake to cook for about 1 minute or until it's just starting to pull away from the sides of the pan and is golden brown underneath.

H. Finally, transfer to a serving plate.

**Your answers:**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. D | 2. | 3. | 4. |
| 5. | 6. | 7. | 8. |

**Exercise 15a. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Underline the mistakes and rewrite the correct sentences in the spaces.**

1. My friends and I are really keen on play computer games.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. I really like to getting involved in team sports. It is good for building up cooperative skills.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. Mai especially loving to spend her free time sleeping and being lazy in my room.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. She enjoys go shopping on weekends and hang out with friends.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. I am very interested in study English.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 15b. Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences.**

1. When/ games/ be careful/ you/ online/, /when / make friends / strangers *I* you/ with / play/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. We/ that/ can/ Kim/ likes/ see/ the/ piano/ playing/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. such as/ hobbies/ or/ making/ things/ crafts/ collecting/ interesting/ are /Some/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. health/ Sitting/ problems/ all/ day/ in front of/ the/ can/ computer/ cause/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. fancy/ you/ do/ children/ with/ working/ ?/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 16a. Rewrite the sentences by using gerund or to-infinitive after the verbs of liking and disliking.**

1. I prefer reading in bed.

🡪 I prefer

2. I love to watch cartoons on TV.

🡪 I love

3. Does Trung hate to do morning exercises?

🡪 Does

4. They love sunbathing and swimming.

🡪 They love

5. Does she prefer to watch TV during her meals?

🡪 Does she

6. We love to skateboard in the park after school.

🡪 We love

**Exercise 16b. Rewrite the sentence without changing its meaning.**

1. I am interested in learning English.

🡪 I like

2. Lan likes using the computer best in her free time.

🡪 Lan's favorite

3. I am interested in going camping with my close friends.

🡪 I fancy

4. Mr. Pike is a big fan of water polo.

🡪 Mr. Pike is fond

5. It is not a problem to me whether I have to pick her up to the cinema or not.

🡪 I don't mind

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **UNIT 2. LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE**  **I. VOCABULARY** | | | |
| **Word** | **Type** | **Pronunciation** | **Meaning** |
| **catch** | v | **/kætʃ/** | đánh được, câu được (cá |
| **Ex:** How many fish did you **catch**? *Bạn đã câu được bao nhiêu con cá?* | | | |
| **cattle** | n | **/ˈkætl** | gia súc |
| **Ex:** There is a herd of **cattle** in the pasture. *Có một đàn gia súc trên đồng cỏ.* | | | |
| **combine harvester** | n | **/ˈkɒmbaɪn ˈhɑːrvɪstər/** | máy gặt liên hợp |
| **Ex:** It's time to experience the latest generation **combine harvesters.** *Đã đến lúc trải nghiêm máy gặt đập liên hợp thế hệ mới nhất.* | | | |
| **crop** | n | **/krɒp/** | vụ, mùa |
| **Ex:** We had a very good **crop** of apples last year. *Chúng tôi đã có một vụ táo bội thu vào năm ngoái.* | | | |
| **cultivate** | v | **/ˈkʌltɪveɪt/** | trồng trọt |
| **Ex:** The people here **cultivate** mainly rice and beans. *Người dân ở đây trồng lúa và đậu là chủ yếu.* | | | |
| **dry** | v | **/draɪ/** | phơi khô, sấy khô |
| **Ex:** The little boy **is drying** rice. *Cậu bé đang phơi lúa.* | | | |
| **feed** | v | **/fi:d/** | cho ăn |
| **Ex:** Have you **fed** the cat yet? *Bạn đã cho mèo ăn chưa?* | | | |
| **ferry** | n | **/ferɪ/** | phá |
| **Ex:** We caught the **ferry** across the river. *Chúng tôi bắt phà qua sông.* | | | |
| **harvest** | n, v | **/ˈhɑːrvɪst/** | vụ thu hoạch, vụ gặt, thu hoặc, gặt hái |
| **Ex:** We are extremely busy during the **harvest**. *Chúng tôi vô cùng hận rộn trong mùa thu hoạch.* | | | |
| **herd** | v | **/hɜːrd/** | chăn giữ vật nuôi |
| **Ex:** He **is herding** the buffalo. *Anh ta đang đi chăn trâu.* | | | |
| **hospitable** | adj | **/hɒˈspɪtəbl/** | mến khách, hiếu khách |
| **Ex:** The local people are very **hospitable**. *Người dân địa phương rất hiếu khách.* | | | |
| **lighthouse** | n | **/ˈlaɪthaʊs/** | đèn biển, hải đăng |
| **Ex:** A **lighthouse** marks the entrance to the harbour. *Một ngọn hải đăng đánh dấu lối vào bến cảng.* | | | |
| **load** | v | **/ləʊd/** | chất, chở |
| **Ex:** The farmers **are loading** rice to the village. *Những người nông dân đang chở lúa về làng.* | | | |
| **milk** | n, v | **/mɪlk/** | sữa, vắt sữa |
| **Ex:** Mr. Dan **milks** the cow every morning. *Ông Dan vắt sữa bò mỗi sáng.* | | | |
| **orchard** | n | **/ˈɔːrtʃərd/** | vườn cây ăn quả |
| **Ex:** There is an apple **orchard** nearby. *Có một vườn táo gần đó.* | | | |
| **paddy field** | n | **/ˈpædɪ fi:ld/** | ruộng lúa |
| **Ex:** The farmer is working in the **paddy field**. *Người nông dân đang làm việc ở ruộng lúa.* | | | |
| **picturesque** | adj | **/ˌpɪktʃəˈresk/** | đẹp, hấp dẫn (phong cảnh) |
| ***Ex:*** We came to a **picturesque** cottage. *Chúng tôi đến một ngôi nhà đẹp như tranh vẽ.* | | | |
| **plough** | v | **/plaʊ/** | cày (thửa ruộng) |
| ***Ex:*** After months without rain, the ground was too hard to **plough**. *Sau nhiều tháng không có mưa, mặt đất trở nên quá cứng để cày xới.* | | | |
| **specialty** | n | **/ˌspeʃiˈæləti/** | đặc sản |
| ***Ex:*** Seafood is a **specialty** on the island. *Hải sản là một đặc sàn ở trên đảo.* | | | |
| **stretch** | v | **/stretʃ/** | kéo dài ra |
| ***Ex:*** Stop **stretching**your sleeves like that! *Đừng kéo dài tay ảo của con ra như the!* | | | |
| **unload** | v | **/ˌʌnˈləʊd/** | dỡ hàng |
| ***Ex:*** The truck driver was waiting to **unload**. *Tài xế xe tải đang chờ để dỡ hàng.* | | | |
| **vast** | adj | **/vɑːst/** | ruộng lớn, mênh mông, bao la |
| ***Ex:***It's a vast land. *Đó là một vùng đất rộng lớn.* | | | |
| **well-trained** | adj | **/wel treind/** | lành nghề, có tay nghề |
| ***Ex:*** He is a **well-trained** craftsman. *Anh ấy là một người thợ thủ công lành nghề.* | | | |

**II. WORD FORM**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Word** | **Related words** | **Transcription** | **Meaning** |
| **collect (v)**  thu gom, lấy | collection (n) | /kəˈlekʃn/ | sự thu gom, sự sưu tầm |
| collective (adj) | /kəˈlektɪv/ | tập thể, chung |
| collector (n) | /kəˈlektər/ | người sưu tầm, người thu gom |
| collectively (adv) | /kəˈlektɪvli/ | chung, tập thể |
| **cultivate (v)**  trồng trọt | cultivable (adj) | /ˈkʌltɪvəbl/ | có thể canh tác |
| cultivated (adj) | /ˈkʌltɪveɪtɪd/ | có học thức, tu dưỡng |
| cultivation (n) | /ˌkʌltɪˈveɪʃn/ | sự canh tác |
| **disturb (v)**  làm phiền | disturbance (n) | /dɪˈstɜːrbəns/ | sự quấy rầy, làm phiền |
| disturbing (adj) | /dɪˈstɜːrbɪŋ/ | nhiễu loạn |
| disturbed (adj) | /dɪˈstɜːrbd/ | bối rối, lúng túng, bị nhiễu |
| **convenient (adj)** thuận tiện | convenience (n) | /kənˈviːniəns/ | sự thuận tiện, tiện lợi |

**III. GRAMMAR**

**1. Comparative forms of adverbs - So sánh hơn của trạng từ**

- Trạng từ dùng để bổ nghĩa cho động từ, tính từ hoặc một trạng từ khác. Trong tiếng Anh, các trạng từ có thể được dùng để so sánh mức độ hoặc cách thực hiện một hành động giữa hai vật, người hoặc nhóm.

**a. Trạng từ ngắn & trạng từ dài**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Trạng từ ngắn** | **Trạng từ dài** |
| - Trạng từ ngắn là trạng từ có một âm tiết  *E.g:*  hard: chăm chỉ  fast: nhanh  near: gần  late: muộn | - Trạng từ dài là trạng từ có 2 âm tiết trở lên.  *E.g:*  quickly: một cách nhanh chóng  interestingly: một cách thú vị  tiredly: một cách mệt mỏi  carefully: một cách cẩn thận |

**b. So sánh hơn với trạng từ**

*\* So sánh hơn với trạng từ ngắn:* Với các trạng từ ngắn có cùng dạng thức giống tính từ như: fast, last, late, hard, soon... khi chuyển sang so sánh hơn ta thêm đuôi *-ER.*

***Cấu trúc:***

**S1 + V+ adv- er + than + S2 + auxiliary V**

**S1 + V+ adv- er + than + O/ N/ Pronoun**

***E.g:***         They work harder than I do.

= They work harder than me.

*(Họ làm việc chăm chỉ hơn tôi.)*

*\* So sánh hơn với trạng từ dài:* Với các trạng từ dài, khi chuyển sang dạng so sánh hơn chúng ta thêm *MORE* trước trạng từ.

***Cấu trúc:***

**S1 + V + more + adv + than + S2 + auxiliary V**

**S1 + V + more + adv + than + O/ N/ Pronoun**

***E.g:***         My friend did the test **more carefully**than I did.

= My friend did the test **more carefully**than me.

*(Bạn tôi làm bài kiểm tra cẩn thận hơn tôi.)*

**c. Một số trường họp trạng từ bất quy tắc**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Trạng từ** | **So sánh hơn** |
| well | better |
| badly | worse |
| much/ many | more |
| a little/ little | less |
| far | farther/ further |

**IV. PRONUNCIATION**

**Sound /ə/ and /ɪ/**

**1. Nguyên âm ngắn /**ə**/**

**a. Cách phát âm**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - /**ə**/ là một nguyên âm ngắn. Khi phát âm âm này, chúng ta mở miệng tự nhiên, môi và lưỡi để thư giãn sau đó phát âm /**ə**/.  - Âm /**ə**/ được phát ra ngắn, gọn và dứt khoát, khi phát âm xong lưỡi vẫn giữ nguyên. | https://lh6.googleusercontent.com/Y37RUNdv6cgyhWwOmScxygRcEyARabkpk844lenseTjYShGT2UTmbnX4Rwqo9C_sMLy5OAdSAWTaxzNwl4__wuAyH17cRK4WNEFnk2yxvWIJF98gD8fk-fnlqX24qdGIZOHHWOGtkI26VJvmJHFG1Q=s800 |

**• *E.g.***

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| sof**a** | /ˈsəʊfə/ | moth**e**r | /ˈmʌðər/ |
| zebr**a** | /ˈziːbrə/ | b**a**nan**a** | /bəˈnænə/ |
| pict**u**re | /ˈpɪktʃər/ | fam**ou**s | /ˈfeɪməs/ |
| activ**i**ty | /ækˈtɪvəti/ | c**o**llect | /kəˈlekt/ |

**b. Dấu hiệu nhận biết âm /ə/**

**✔ Dấu hiệu 1:**“a” được phát âm là /ə/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| b**a**nan**a** | /bəˈnænə/ | quả chuối |
| **a**partment | /əˈpɑːrtmənt/ | căn hộ |
| sep**a**r**a**te | /ˈseprət/ | chia rẽ |
| change**a**ble | /ˈtʃeɪndʒəbl/ | có thể thay đổi được |
| bal**a**nce | /ˈbæləns/ | cân bằng |
| expl**a**nation | /ˌekspləˈneɪʃn/ | sự giải thích |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 2:**“e” được phát âm là /ə/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| answ**e**r | /ˈænsər/ | trả lời |
| sil**e**nt | /ˈsaɪlənt/ | im lặng |
| op**e**n | /ˈəʊpən/ | mở ra |
| prud**e**nt | /ˈpruːdənt/ | thận trọng |
| gen**e**rous | /ˈdʒenərəs/ | rộng lượng, hào phóng |
| diff**e**r**e**nt | /ˈdɪfərənt/ | khác nhau |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 3:**“o” được phát âm là /ə/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| at**o**m | /ˈætəm/ | nguyên tử |
| c**o**mpare | /kəmˈpeə(r)/ | so sánh |
| c**o**ntrol | /kənˈtrəʊl/ | kiểm soát |
| freed**o**m | /ˈfriːdəm/ | sự tự do |
| hands**o**me | /ˈhænsəm/ | đẹp trai |
| rand**o**m | /ˈrændəm/ | ngẫu nhiên |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 4:**“u” được phát âm là /ə/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **u**pon | /əˈpɒn/ | bên trên |
| pict**u**re | /ˈpɪktʃər/ | bức tranh |
| s**u**ggest | /səˈdʒest/ | gợi ý |
| s**u**rprise | /sərˈpraɪz/ | ngạc nhiên |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 5.**“ou” được phát âm là /ə/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| fam**ou**s | /ˈfeɪməs/ | nổi tiếng |
| danger**ou**s | /ˈdeɪndʒərəs/ | nguy hiểm |
| anxi**ou**s | /ˈæŋkʃəs/ | lo âu |

**2. Nguyên âm ngắn /ɪ/**

**a. Cách phát âm**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - /ɪ/ là một nguyên âm ngắn. Khi phát âm, chúng ta đưa lưỡi hướng lên trên và ra phía trước, khoảng cách môi trên và dưới hẹp, mở rộng miệng sang hai bên. | https://lh6.googleusercontent.com/n6QZyiiQfDZmmMdDnrmv6yxu6a7Pes9nj6leisunb4rqDHjp0xfV8Zeen1ynCCJdGiZ9aaRtsxq0KFGlqTE4Hk7O6CLk6zQpumpcT6yTUbkK4z_hpTgPvyfQjIFpbjEqfAsPS_1RRLrBjD5i5jeRnw=s800 |

**• *E.g.***

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| fish | /fɪʃ/ | begin | /bɪ‘gɪn/ | fifty | /'fɪftɪ/ | chicken | /tʃɪkɪn/ |
| gym | /gɪm/ | dinner | /'dɪnər/ | minute | /'mɪnɪt/ | him | /hɪm/ |

**Dấu hiệu 1:**“a” được phát âm là /ɪ/ với những danh từ có hai âm tiết và có tận cùng bằng “age”.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| vill**a**ge | /ˈvɪlɪdʒ/ | làng, xã |
| cott**a**ge | /ˈkɒtɪdʒ/ | nhà tranh, lều tranh |
| short**a**ge | /ˈʃɔːtɪdʒ/ | tình trạng thiếu hụt |
| bagg**a**ge | /ˈbæɡɪdʒ/ | hành lý trang bị cầm tay |
| cour**a**ge | /ˈkʌrɪdʒ/ | lòng can đảm |

**Dấu hiệu 2:**“e” được phát âm là /ɪ/ trong tiếp đầu ngữ “be”, “de”, “re”, “em”, “en”, “ex” và “pre”.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| b**e**come | /bɪˈkʌm/ | trở nên |
| b**e**have | /bɪˈheɪv/ | cư xử |
| d**e**cide | /dɪ'saɪd/ | quyết định |
| r**e**new | /rɪ'nju:/ | đổi mới |
| r**e**turn | /rɪˈtɜːrn | trở về, hoàn lại |
| **e**nslave | /ɪnˈsleɪv/ | bắt làm nô lệ |
| **e**xchange | /ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ/ | trao đổi |
| pr**e**dict | /prɪˈdɪkt/ | dự đoán, đoán trước |

**Dấu hiệu 3:**“i” được phát âm là /ɪ/ với từ kết thúc bằng i + một hoặc hai phụ âm.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| w**i**n | /wɪn/ | chiến thắng |
| m**i**ss | /mɪs/ | nhớ |
| sh**i**p | /ʃɪp/ | thuyền, tàu |
| b**i**t | /bɪt/ | miếng nhỏ, mẩu |
| s**i**t | /sɪt/ | ngồi |
| k**i**t | /kɪt/ | đồ đạc, quần áo |
| d**i**n | /dɪn/ | tiếng ồn ào (cười nói) |
| d**i**m | /dɪm/ | mờ ảo, không rõ |

**Dấu hiệu 4:**“ui” được phát âm là /ɪ/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| b**ui**ld | /bɪld/ | xây cất |
| g**ui**lt | /gɪlt/ | tội lỗi |
| g**ui**nea | /‘gɪnɪ/ | đồng tiền Anh (21 shillings) |
| g**ui**tar | /ɡɪˈtɑːr/ | đàn ghi-ta |
| q**ui**lt | /kwɪlt/ | nệm bông |
| q**ui**xotic | /kwɪkˈsɒtɪk/ | hào hiệp, viển vông |

**V. PRACTICE**

**Exercise 1. Look at the bold word, use single underline with the word containing sound /ə/ and double underline with the word containing sound /ɪ/.**

1.**We**saw a herd of **zebras**grazing in the savannah during our safari.

2. We went **fishing**at the lake and caught a big **fish.**

3. She cooked a delicious roasted **chicken**for dinner.

4. The photographer captured a stunning **picture**of the sunset over the ocean.

5. She has **six**siblings, making her part of a large family.

6. He couldn't help but **grin**when he saw his favorite dessert on the table.

7. He enjoys outdoor **activities**such as hiking, biking, and camping.

8. She likes to **collect**vintage stamps as a hobby.

9. The doctor prescribed some pain relief **pills**for her backache.

10. I would like to **suggest**a new restaurant for our next dinner outing.

**Exercise 2. Read the sentences in exercise 1 aloud and pay attention to the sound /ə/ and /ɪ/.**

**Exercise 3. Put the nouns into the correct column.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| grapes, food, buffaloes, a camel, data, dolls, a tent, water, cattle, a flag, strawberry, a bike, a fence, tea buds, a car, goats, information, an ostrich, blackberry, sheep, a motorbike, a notice, postcards, a memorial, a donkey | | | | |
| **Ride** | **Collect** | **Pick** | **Herd** | **Put up** |
|  |  |  |  |  |

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentence with the words in the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **boring** | **nomadic** | **hard** | **peaceful** | **colourful** |
| **vast** | **slow** | **inconvenient** | **brave** | **friendly** |

1. Life in the city is fast but life in the countryside is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

2. The old city around the cathedral is the most \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ part of town.

3. Our neighbors have always been very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

4. I’m sure that people are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to strangers in my village.

5. My father is a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ soldier.

6. The film was so \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that I fell asleep.

7. It will be very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for me to have no car.

8. The \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ majority of pupils attend state-funded schools here.

9. She hoped the different ethnic groups in the area could live together in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ co-existence.

10. A \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ life is hard but interesting.

**Exercise 5. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

1. Iceland is considered the most \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ country in the word. (peace)

2. A \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle has its advantages and disadvantages. (nomad)

3. My brother has been a stamp \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for several years. (collect)

4. It is a/an \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ place to hold a picnic because it is too far from the road. (convenience)

5. Drinking water in some areas may be \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. (safe)

6. During my stay in the village, I was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with several local farmers. (friend)

7. Encouraging children to eat and drink \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is very important. (health)

8. Local people in the village often wear their **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_**costumes during the festivals. (tradition)

9. Please give **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_**to that charity to help the homeless after the flood. (generous)

10. The baby slept very **\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_**because the bed was really comfortable. (sound)

**Exercise 6. Fill each blank with a word/phrase in the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **busiest time** | **herding** | **noisier** | **buffalo** | **buffalo-drawn carts** |
| **colorful** | **rice** | **fantastic** | **countryside** | **harvest time** |

1. At the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, my brother always helps my parents load the rice onto the truck and drives it home.

2. I often help my parents dry the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the yard in front of my house.

3. Some farmers in my village still use \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to transport rice home.

4. He usually goes \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the buffaloes with other boys in his village.

5. My pen pal says he would like to visit my \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at harvest time to see what farmers do.

6. My friend has never ridden a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ so he would like to try once.

7. Harvest time is the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the year in the countryside.

8. Our garden is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in spring when almost flowers bloom.

9. I like looking at the stars on starry nights. It's \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

10. My uncle lives in the city. He says it’s \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than my village.

**Exercise 7. Put the adverbs ill the comparative form.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Adverbs** | **Comparative form** | **Adverbs** | **Comparative form** | **Adverbs** |
| 1. badly |  | 11. late |  | 1. badly |
| 2. conveniently |  | 12. smartly |  | 2. conveniently |
| 3. early |  | 13. responsibly |  | 3. early |
| 4. far |  | 14. patiently |  | 4. far |
| 5. fast |  | 15. generously |  | 5. fast |
| 6. fluently |  | 16. cleverly |  | 6. fluently |
| 7. happily |  | 17. quickly |  | 7. happily |
| 8. hard |  | 18. suitably |  | 8. hard |
| 9. slowly |  | 19. beautifully |  | 9. slowly |
| 10. well |  | 20. strongly |  | 10. well |

**Exercise 8. Fill in the blank with the correct comparative form of the adverbs.**

*E.g:* He is singing ***more loudly than*** the other singers. (loudly)

1. He arrived \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ expected. (early)

2. We walked \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the rest of the people. (slowly)

3. They called us \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the afternoon. (late)

4. My mother and my sister talked \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the other guests. (loudly)

5. He hit his arm \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ before. (hard)

6. The Spanish athlete ran \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the other runners. (fast)

7. Jim threw the ball \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Peter. (far)

8. We answered all the questions \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the other students. (well)

9. Our new teacher explains the exercises \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ our old teacher. (badly)

10. The new mechanic checked the car \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the old mechanic. (thoroughly)

**Exercise 9. Fill in the blanks with suitable comparative forms of the words provided.**

1. Towns are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than village. (big)

2. A sofa is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than a chair. (comfortable)

3. Does an ox run \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than a horse? (slowly)

4. Laura sings \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than her sister. (well)

5. My house is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ from Ha Noi than Nam s house. (far)

6. Minh plays the flute \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than Quang. (badly)

7. Traffic in the city is always \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than that in the countryside. (busy)

8. This year the farmers work \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than they did last year. (hard)

9. Villages are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than towns. (quiet)

10. People in this area live \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than those in other areas. (happily)

**Exercise 10. Underline the mistake in each sentence and correct it.**

1. Their life has been more comfortably since they moved to the city.        \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. She looks more pretty in this white dress.                                        \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. The manager wants us to work more hardly.                                \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. This week you look more healthily than last week.                         \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. Everyone in my town is looking for more better crop this year.                \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. Jim runs more fastly than his friends.                                        \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. I think a settle life is more better than a nomadic life.                         \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. Today Jim performs more confident than usual.                                \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. The heavy rain makes it more difficultly to drive.                                 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. Their team preformed much more well than our team.                        \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 11. Fill in the blanks with suitable comparative forms of the words provided.**

1. I speak English \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ now than last year. (fluently)

2. They smiled \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than before. (happily)

3. Tom arrived \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than I expected. (early)

4. We will meet \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the afternoon. (late)

5. Mary dances \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else. (gracefully)

6. Could you speak \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_? (loud)

7. Jim could do the test \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than Jane. (well)

8. We walked \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than other people. (slowly)

9. Planes can fly \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than birds. (high)

10. I can throw the ball \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else in my team. (far)

11. James drives \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than his wife. (carefully)

12. I visit my grandmother \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than my brother. (often)

13. No one can run \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than John. (fast)

14. My sister cooks \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than I. (badly)

15. Everyone in the company is working \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than ever before. (hard)

**Exercise 12. Complete the sentences with the correct form of adjectives or** **adverbs in brackets.**

1. Some people think that health is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than money. (important).

2. The pollution in our city is much \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than it used to be. (bad)

3. My new teacher explained the lessons \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than my old teacher. (clear)

4. He doesn't play volleyball as \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ as his brother. (good)

5. Get rid of the sorrow! You will do it \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ next time. (good)

6. Communication is a lot \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than it was 50 years ago. (easy)

7. People in rural areas wear \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than those in cities. (simple)

8. Robert arrived at the meeting \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than Francis. (late)

9. These trousers are too wide. Do you have any that are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_? (narrow)

10. My mother always gets up \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than everybody else in the house. (early)

11. Trang speaks \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than the other ESL students in the class. (fluent)

12. Can't you think of anything \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to say? (intelligent)

13. I think his new book is much \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than his last one. (boring)

14. Max finished his homework \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than anyone else in the class. (fast)

15. He doesn't look as \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ as he used to. (happy)

**Exercise 13. Read the passage and choose the correct option to fill in the blank. :**

Life is changing rapidly in the large cities of England. However, life in other areas remains much the (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ as         it has been for centuries. Factories have brought huge population increases to the cities, and city life boomed.

City residents have discovered a new (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of         life, but in country villages the traditional lifestyle has remained nearly (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. There have been a few changes, particularly the new steam-powered machinery. It made farm production more (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. But for the people who remain in the countryside, daily life continues much as it had before the (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ revolution. Life in country villages continues to (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at a slow pace. The daily schedule depends on the times that the sun rose and set and on the weather. In a typical village, the (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ number of workers is still employed in agriculture or in domestic service. A smaller number of people work in various trades. Even (8) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ work in the professions.

1. A. similar                B. same                C. different                D. both A & B

2. A. method                B. walk                        C. way                        D. path

3. A. changeful        B. changeable                C. unchanged                D. Change

4. A. efficient                B. efficiently                C. efficiency                D. inefficient

5. A. Industry                 B. Industrial                C. Industrialize                D. Industrialized

6. A. run                 B. walk                  C. move                D. drive

7. A. largest                 B. biggest                C. highest                D. all are correct

8. A. more                 B. less                        C. few                        D. fewer

**Exercise 14. Read the text and choose the correct answer.**

Living in the country is something that people from the city often dream about. However, in reality, it has both advantages and disadvantages.

There are certainly many advantages to living in the country. First, you can enjoy peace and quietness. Moreover, people tend to be friendlier. A further advantage is that there is less traffic, so it is safer for young children.

However, there are certain disadvantages or drawbacks to life outside the city. First, because there are fewer people, you are likely to have few friends. In addition, entertainment is difficult to find, particularly in the evening. Furthermore, the fact that there are fewer shops and services means that it is hard to find jobs.

In short, it can be seen that the country is more suitable for some people than others. On the whole, it is often the best for those who are retired or who have young children. In contrast, young people who have a career are better provided in the city.

1. According to the passage, living in the country has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. only good points                                 B. only bad points

C. both good and bad points                         D. no disadvantages

2. How many advantages does living in the country have?

A. Two                 B. Three                 C. Four                 D. No

3. Living in the country is safer for young children because \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. there is less traffic                                 B. there are few shops

C. there are fewer people                         D. there are few services

4. Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?

A. People in the country tend to be friendlier than people in the city.

B. It's hard to find entertainment in the country.

C. There are fewer shops and services in the country.

D. The country is only suitable for retired people.

5. Having few friends is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. one of drawbacks to life in the country

B. the only disadvantage to living in the country

C. one of certain drawbacks to life outside the city

D. one of certain advantages to life outside the city

**Exercise 15. Read the text and answer the questions below.**

Last week Nick and some of his classmates went to the countryside. They went to visit a farm of Nick's uncle.

They left early in the morning and went there by bus. Nick's uncle, Mr. Brown met them at the bus stop and took them to his farm. On the way, Uncle Brown showed them the field of wheat and vegetables where some tractors were running up and down, ploughing and breaking soil, distributing manure and planting potatoes. ,...

After lunch, they all went for a walk. In the large yard of the farm, they saw some farm machines. Among them is the biggest machine which is called a combine harvester. They were told that this machine can cut and thresh com at the same time.

In the afternoon, they went to the place where cattle such as horses, sheep and cows were raised. They were very excited to see how cows were milked by the workers there. Uncle Brown also spoke about many interesting things in the countryside. After having some fruits and cakes, they said goodbye and went home.

1. How did Nick and his classmates go to Uncle Brown's farm?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. What does his uncle grow on his farm?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. What can a tractor do?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. What is typical of a combine harvester?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. Which kinds of cattle are raised on Uncle Brown's farm?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 16a. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meanings. Use the right comparative forms of the words in brackets.**

1. Hung drives more carefully than his brother. (carefully)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. The laboratory in my school is now better equipped than some years ago. (badly)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. Nam works more lazily so he often gets worse marks than Quang. (hard, good)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. Trung drives more carefully than Minh so he has rarely had an accident. (carelessly)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. Going by taxi is faster than going by bus but it costs more than a bus. (slow, little)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 16b. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meanings. Use the comparative form with *less.***

*E.g:* Ann speaks French more fluently than James.

🡪 James speaks French less fluently than Ann.

1. This summer I go to the beach more often than last summer.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. This cake is more freshly made than that one.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. Jim behaves more politely than his younger brother.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. Teenagers act more violently these days than in the past.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. Your mother is more patient than my mother.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 17. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meanings.**

*E.g:* This exercise is easier than that one.

*That exercise is more difficult than this one.*

1. Mr. Smith is wealthier than Mr. Brown.

🡪 Mr. Brown

2. My house is smaller than my parent's house.

🡪 My parent's house

3. The black dress is more expensive than the red one.

🡪 The red dress

4. Today it is colder than yesterday.

🡪 Yesterday

5. I don't think you are taller than me.

🡪 I don't think I

6. Is Jim worse at Math than John?

🡪 Is John

7. Jim looks much younger than his classmates.

🡪 Jim's classmates

8. Your hair is longer than mine.

🡪 My hair

9. My sister speaks more quickly than me.

🡪 I speak

10. Mary drives more carefully than Tony.

🡪 Tony drives

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **UNIT 3. TEENAGERS**  **I. VOCABULARY** | | | |
| **Word** | **Type** | **Pronunciation** | **Meaning** |
| **account** | n | **/əˈkaʊnt/** | tài khoản |
| **Ex:** I paid the money into my savings **account**. *Tôi đã nộp tiên vào tài khoản tiết kiệm của mình.* | | | |
| **browse** | v | **/braʊz/** | đọc lướt, tìm (trên mạng) |
| **Ex:** He **browses** the book's contents. *Anh ấy lướt qua nội dung của cuốn sách.* | | | |
| **bully** | n, v | **/ˈbʊli/** | kẻ hay bắt nạt, bắt nạt |
| **Ex:** My son **is being bullied** at school. *Con trai tôi đang bị bắt nạt ở trường.* | | | |
| **bullying** | n | **/ˈbʊliɪŋ/** | sự bắt nạt |
| **Ex:** **Bullying** is a problem in many schools. *Bắt nạt là một vấn đề ở nhiều trường học.* | | | |
| **concentrate** | v | **/ˈkɒnsntreɪt/** | tập trung |
| **Ex:** She tried to **concentrate** on reading her book but she couldn't. *Cô ấy cố gắng tập trung vào việc đọc cuốn sách của mình nhưng không thể.* | | | |
| **connect** | v | **/kəˈnekt/** | kết nối |
| **Ex:** Please hold the line. I'm trying to **connect** you. *Xin hãy giữ máy. Tôi đang cố gắng kết nối với bạn.* | | | |
| **craft** | n | **/krɑːft/** | (nghề, đồ, kỹ nghệ) thủ công |
| **Ex:** I bought it at a local **craft** fair. *Tôi đã mua nó tại một hội chợ thủ công địa phương.* | | | |
| **enjoyable** | adj | **/ɪnˈdʒɔɪəbl/** | thú vị, gây hứng thú |
| **Ex:** Thank you for an **enjoyable** evening. *Cảm ơn bạn về một buổi tối thủ vị.* | | | |
| **expectation** | n | **/ˌekspekˈteɪʃn/** | sự mong chờ, kỳ vọng |
| **Ex:** I'm sorry to disappoint your **expectation**. *Tôi xin lỗi đã làm bạn thất vọng.* | | | |
| **focused** | adj | **/ˈfəʊkəst/** | chuyên tâm, tập trung |
| **Ex:** All eyes were **focused** on him. *Mọi ánh mắt đều tập trung vào anh ta.* | | | |
| **forum** | n | **/ˈfɔːrəm/** | diễn đạt |
| **Ex:** We visited the **forum** of ancient Romans yesterday. *Hôm qua, chúng tôi đã truy cập diễn đàn của người La Mã cổ đại.* | | | |
| **log** | v | **/lɒɡ/** | đăng nhập |
| **Ex:** You need a password to **log** on. *Bạn cần mật khẩu để đăng nhập.* | | | |
| **mature** | adj | **/məˈtʃʊə(r)/** | chín chắn, trưởng thành |
| **Ex:** Jane is very **mature** for her age. *Jane rất trưởng thành so với tuổi của cô ấy.* | | | |
| **media** | n | **/ˈmiːdiə/** | (phương tiện) truyền thông |
| **Ex:** The **media** has a powerful influence on public opinion. *Các phương tiện truyền thông có ảnh hưởng mạnh mẽ đến dư luận.* | | | |
| **midterm** | adj | **/ˈmɪdtɜːrm/** | giữa kỳ |
| **Ex:** We will have a **midterm** test next week. *Tuần tới chúng ta sẽ có bài kiểm tra giữa kì.* | | | |
| **notification** | n | **/ˌnəʊtɪfɪˈkeɪʃn/** | sự thông báo |
| **Ex:** You will receive a **notification** when your package is delivered. *Bạn sẽ nhận được thông báo khi gói hàng của bạn được giao.* | | | |
| **peer** | n | **/pɪə(r)/** | người ngang hàng, bạn đồng lứa |
| ***Ex:*** Children are worried about failing in front of their **peers**. *Trẻ em rất lo lắng về việc thất bại trước bạn bè đồng trang lứa.* | | | |
| **pressure** | n | **/ˈpreʃər/** | áp lực |
| ***Ex:*** Peer **pressure** is strong among young people. *Áp lực ngang hàng với bạn bè cùng trang lứa rất mạnh trong giới trẻ.* | | | |
| **schoolwork** | n | **/ˈskuːlwɜːk/** | bài vở trên lớp |
| ***Ex:*** Mark is struggling to keep up with his **schoolwork**. *Mark đang phải vật lộn để theo kịp bài vở ở trường.* | | | |
| **session** | n | **/ˈseʃn/** | tiết học |
| ***Ex:*** Each **session** lasts about 45 minutes. *Mỗi tiết học kéo dài khoảng 45 phút.* | | | |
| **stress** | n | **/stres/** | sự căng thẳng |
| ***Ex:*** We all struggle with the **stresses** and strains of daily life. *Tât cả chúng ta đều phải đối mặt với những căng thẳng và mệt mỏi của cuộc sống thường ngày.* | | | |
| **stressful** | adj | **/ˈstresfl/** | căng thẳng, tạo áp lực |
| ***Ex:***My job's getting more and more **stressful**. *Công việc của tôi ngày càng căng thẳng hơn.* | | | |
| **upload** | v | **/ˌʌpˈləʊd/** | tải lên |
| ***Ex:*** The video **was uploaded** 2 minutes ago. *Video đã được tải lên 2 phút trước.* | | | |

**II. WORD FORM**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Word** | **Related words** | **Transcription** | **Meaning** |
| **concentrate (v)**  tập trung | concentration (n) | /ˌkɒnsnˈtreɪʃn/ | sự., tập trung |
| concentrated (adj) | /ˈkɒnsntreɪtɪd/ | tập trung |
| **connect (v)**  kết nối | connected (adj) | /kəˈnektɪd/ | có quan hệ, họ hàng với |
| connection (n) | /kəˈnekʃn/ | sự kết nối |
| connectedness (n) | /kəˈnektɪdnəs/ | có sự liên hệ, liên quan |
| connective (adj) | /kəˈnektɪv/ | liên kết |
| **enjoyable (adj)** thú vị,  gây hứng thú | enjoy (v) | /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ | thích thú |
| enjoyment (n) | /ɪnˈdʒɔɪmənt/ | sự hứng thú, thích thú |
| enjoyably (adv) | /ɪnˈdʒɔɪəbli/ | hứng thú, thú vị |
| **expectation (n)** sự mong chờ,  kì vọng | expect (v) | /ɪkˈspekt/ | mong chờ, kì vọng |
| expectancy (n) | /ɪkˈspektənsi/ | sự mong chờ, |
| expectance (n) | /ɪkˈspektəns/ | triển vọng |
| expectant (adj) | /ɪkˈspektənt/ | có tính mong đợi |
| **mature (adj)** chín chắn, trường thành | mature (v) | /məˈtʃʊə(r)/ | làm cho chín chắn, trưởng thành |
| maturity (n) | /məˈtʃʊərəti/ | tính chín chắn, tính trưởng thành |
| **notification (n)**  sự thông báo | notify (v) | /ˈnəʊtɪfaɪ/ | thông báo, chú ý |
| notifiable (adj) | /ˈnəʊtɪfaɪəbl/ | có thể khai báo |

**III. GRAMMAR**

**SIMPLE SENTENCES AND COMPOUND SENTENCES**

*(Câu đơn và câu ghép)*

**1. Simple Sentences (Câu đơn)**

- Chỉ có 1 mệnh đề chính, nghĩa là có 1 chủ ngữ và 1 động từ: **S + V**

- Có thể chủ ngữ là 2 danh từ nối với nhau bằng 'and' hoặc có 2 động từ nối với nhau bằng 'and' nhưng vẫn là 1 câu đơn.

***E.g:***         I went to the supermarket yesterday. *(Tớ đi siêu thị ngày hôm qua.)*

S                        V

Mary and Tom are playing tennis. *(Mary và Tom đang chơi tennis.)*

           S                        V

My brother ate a sandwich and drank beer.

        S                              V

*(Anh trai của tôi đã ăn bánh sandwich và uống bia.)*

**2. Compound Sentences (Câu ghép)**

- Một câu ghép gồm 2 hoặc 3 *mênh đe doc ịÔỊ) (mdependent, clause),* hay còn gọi là những câu đơn được nối với nhau bởi liên từ kết hợp (coordinating conjunction) hoặc trạng từ liên kết (conjunctive adverbs).

**a. Coordinating conjunction (Liên từ kết họp)**

- Chúng ta có các liên từ kết hợp thông dụng sau:

F = for                A = and        N = nor                B = but                O = or                Y = yet                S = so

Từ “FANBOYS” là một cách viết để nhớ các "conjunctions" phổ biến nhất một cách dễ dàng, đây là các liên từ khác nhau để tạo nên câu ghép.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Liên từ** | **Ý nghĩa** | **Ví dụ** |
| **FOR** | Diễn đạt lý do hoặc mục đích | I don't like him, **for**he was a bully in the past. |
| **AND** | Thêm (bổ sung) một thứ vào một thứ khác | She likes tea **and**coffee. |
| **NOR** | Bổ sung một ý phủ định vào ý phủ định đã được nêu trước đó | No, I won't be there on Thursday **nor**Friday. |
| **BUT** | Diễn tả sự đối lập, ngược nghĩa | Mickey has a beautiful **but**lazy dog. |
| **OR** | Đưa ra một lựa chọn khác | Would you like tea **or**coffee? |
| **YET** | Dùng đế giới thiệu một ý đối lập với ý trước đó (tương tự but) | Truong plays soccer well, **yet**his favorite sport is basketball. |
| **SO** | Thường dùng để chỉ kết quả | I prepared well in advance **so**I won this game. |

**Lưu ý:**

\***for**đứng giữa câu, trước **for**là dấu phấy (,), sau **for**là một mệnh đề.

\* Thực tế, **nor**ít xuất hiện với chức năng là liên từ mà **nor**thường được sử dụng để kết hợp với **neither**mang nghĩa **neither... nor***(không... cũng không).*

**b. Conjunctive adverb (Trạng từ liên kết)**

**Các trạng từ liên kết:***therefore* (vì thế, vì vậy), *however/ nevertheless* (tuy nhiên, tuy thế, nhưng), *otherwise* (mặt khác), *as a result* (kết quả là)...

*E.g:*         She didn't study anything; as a result, she failed the exam.

*(Cô ta không học hành gì cả; kết quả là, cô ta trượt kỳ thi.)*

He wanted to study late; therefore, he had another cup of coffee.

*(Anh ấy muốn học muộn; vì vậy, anh ấy uống một tách cà phê).*

**IV. PRONUNCIATION**

**Sound /ʊə/ and /ɔɪ/**

**1. Nguyên âm đôi /ʊə/**

**a. Cách phát âm**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - Phát âm âm /ʊ/ dài hơn một chút và sau đó nâng lưỡi lên trên và ra phía sau tạo nên âm /ə/, âm /ə/ phát âm nhanh và ngắn. | https://lh5.googleusercontent.com/rCL8RkuzCz8ihki5I57B9CYkQ8pQBIoisZHmBEQh40wCby5VXxBPJ_N_BciiNJ6PQ-Ca3axmpMay0M8Wum39im0kDDT7EQihJLyH2SkMAwnzbJ2TS58M9Yl9h_jWgieKsPWXMGPhQaI5j28x9K5qcA=s800 |

**• *Các em tập phát âm các ví dụ dưới đây:***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| tourism /ˈtʊrɪzəm/: du lịch | jury /ˈdʒʊəri/: ban giám khảo |
| tour /tʊər/: cuộc đi chơi, du lịch | poor /pʊər/: nghèo |
| truer /trʊər/: chính xác hơn | cure /kjʊər/: chữa trị |

**b. Dấu hiệu nhận biết âm /ʊə/**

**✔ Dấu hiệu 1**: “oo” được phát âm là /ʊə/ trong những từ có một âm tiết mà tận cùng bằng “r”.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| b**oo**r | /bʊər/ | người cục mịch, thô lồ |
| m**oo**r | /mʊər/ | buộc, cột (tàu thuyền) |
| p**oo**r | /pʊər/ | nghèo |
| sp**oo**r | /spʊər/ | dấu vết |

**✔ Dấu hiệu 2:**“ou” có thể được phát âm là /ʊə/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| t**ou**r | /tʊə(r)/ | cuộc du lịch |
| t**ou**rist | /ˈtʊərɪst/ | khách du lịch |
| t**ou**rnament | /ˈtʊənəmənt/ | cuộc đấu thương trên ngựa |

**2. Nguyên âm đôi /ɔɪ/**

**a. Cách phát âm**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - Bắt đầu phát âm từ âm /ɔː/, sau đó di chuyển dần về phía âm /ɪ/.  - Khi bắt đầu phát âm, mở môi tròn và đầu lưỡi chạm hàm răng dưới. Sau đó, kéo môi dần sang hai bên về phía tai và hàm dưới nâng lên một chút.  - Môi mở hờ khi kết thúc âm. | https://lh6.googleusercontent.com/Or3PMtaRG_kJ67cvG-e1sfwFni1GXL4XdS6lY3a2nhqy0M8rF_xNpi6VIweci2vbOYYfbGk7oJA0MVn4BITaXFye1R_GmFjeCYOehwNcS9G2yaEfK49eAD9zefUCoekkGRNbtTPOFiaU1wa8NNpZ7A=s800 |

**• *Các em tập phát âm các ví dụ sau nhé:***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| noisy /ˈnɔɪzi/: ồn ào | destroy /dɪˈstrɔɪ/: phá hủy |
| enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/: thích | employee /ɪmˈplɔɪiː/: nhân viên |
| voice /vɔɪs/: giọng nói | spoil /spɔɪl/: làm hư hại |
| appointment /əˈpɔɪntmənt/: cuộc hẹn | boil /bɔɪl/: đun sôi |

**b. Các dấu hiệu nhận biết nguyên âm đôi /ɔɪ/**

**Dấu hiệu 1:**“oi” được phát âm là /ɔɪ/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| c**oi**n | /kɔɪn/ | đồng tiền |
| f**oi**l | /fɔɪl/ | lá (kim loại) |
| t**oi**l | /tɔɪl/ | công việc khó nhọc |
| v**oi**ce | /vɔɪs/ | giọng nói |
| **oi**l | /ɔɪl/ | dầu |
| b**oi**l | /bɔɪl/ | sôi, sự sôi |
| p**oi**nt | /pɔɪnt/ | điểm, vấn đề |
| h**oi**st | /hɔɪst/ | nhấc bổng lên, thang máy |

**Dấu hiệu 2:**“oy” được phát âm là /ɔɪ/

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| destr**oy** | /di'strɔɪ/ | phá hủy |
| j**oy** | /dʒɔɪ/ | sự vui mừng, hân hoan |
| enj**oy** | /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ | thích thú, hưởng thụ |
| t**oy** | /tɔɪ/ | đồ chơi |
| b**oy** | /bɔɪ/ | cậu bé, chàng trai |

**V. PRACTICE**

**Exercise 1. Use single underline with the word containing /ʊə/ sound and double underline with the word containing /ɔɪ/ sound.**

1. We took a guided tour of the historical landmarks in the city.

2. Her voice was so soothing that it put me to sleep.

3. I enjoy reading books in my free time.

4. I am sure that I left my keys on the kitchen counter.

5. The tracker identified the spoor of the wild animal in the forest.

6. The tourist took pictures of the famous monument as a keepsake.

7. He won the chess tournament after many intense matches.

8. Can you please point out the direction to the nearest grocery store?

**Exercise 2. Read the sentences in exercise 1 aloud and pay attention to the sound /ʊə/ and /ɔɪ/.**

**Exercise 3. Complete the sentence with the words in the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **connect** | **notification** | **struggle** | **influence** | **concentrate** |
| **mature** | **disappoint** | **Bullying** | **pressure** | **enjoyable** |

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is a problem in many schools.

2. She tried to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on reading her book but she couldn't.

3. Please hold the line. I'm trying to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you.

4. Swimming is a very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ way of staying in shape.

5. I'm sorry to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ your expectation.

6. Jane is very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for her age.

7. The media has a powerful \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on public opinion.

8. You will receive a         \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ when your package is delivered.

9. Peer \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is strong among young people.

10. We all \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with the stresses and strains of daily life.

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentence with the words in the box.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **columnist** | **cognitive skills** | **independence** | **self-disciplined** |
| **adolescents** | **resolve** | **house-keeping** | **frustrations** |

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and young adults, both male and female, benefit from physical activity.

2. Some students like to have a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ job.

3. Maths requires a lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

4. Village students often have more \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than city dwellers.

5. They will need to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ much more conflict when they become adolescents.

6. Students should take part in some social activities to reduce school pressures and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

7. Your brain will grow if you improved self-control and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

8. You can become an advice \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ when you graduate from this faculty.

**Exercise 5. Complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are two words that you do not need to use.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **grateful** | **depressed** | **confident** | **worried** | **frustrated** |
| **appreciated** | **delighted** | **calm** | **relaxed** | **tense** |

1. He gets \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ when         people don' t understand what he' s trying to say.

2. I'm not \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ about         her - she can take care of herself.

3. She was very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ as she waited for the interview.

4. The teacher wants the children to feel about \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ asking questions when they don't understand.

5. Anna got 10 marks for her English test. She felt absolutely \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ about that result.

6. She's terribly \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ about losing her job.

7. He told himself to stay \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ whenever he was put into a harsh situation.

8. As soon as I had made the final decision, I felt a lot more \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 6. Complete the conversation with the sentences from the box.**

|  |
| --- |
| **A. Are you worried about the upcoming exam?**  **B. Well, have you thought of solving this problem?**  **C. So, what makes you stressed out?**  **D. Remember to apologize to her for the argument and present your ideas once more time with calmness if you want.**  **E. What's wrong with you?**  **F. Seriously?**  **G. If I were you, I would smile at her, then choose a common topic to talk about.** |

**Mom:**(1) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Hoa:**I’m not sure but I think I am stressed.

**Mom:**(2) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Hoa:**No, I’m not. I have prepared for it, so I can tackle it easily.

**Mom:**(3) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Hoa:**Well, I argued with my best friend yesterday.

**Mom:**(4) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Hoa:**Yes. We discussed how to set up a camp for our group and we couldn't agree on any plans.

**Mom:**(5) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Hoa:**Yes, I have. However, I don’t know how to start a conversation with her.

**Mom:**(6) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Hoa:**Will it work?

**Mom:**It will. After starting the conversation, (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Hoa:**Oh, great! Thank you, mom! I will try.

**Exercise 7. Choose the correct answer to complete the sentence.**

1. Would you like to drink a cup of tea \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ coffee?

A. and                         B. or                         C. although                 D. but

2. My sister plays volleyball well \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I do not.

A. and                         B. but                         C. or                         D. although

3. Most people like watching comedies \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ they're very interesting.

A. because                B. so                        C. although                D. but

4. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Minh likes sport programmes, he watches this animal programme with his family.

A. Because                B. Although                 C. And                         D. But

5. The film is very interesting. It's both moving \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ funny.

A. and                         B. or                         C. although                D. but

6. I have to go out \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I meet my pen pal today.

A. but                         B. so                         C. because                D. or

7. We decide to stay at home \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it’s raining heavily.

A. though                 B. so                         C. because                D. but

8. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she knows that watching too much TV is a bad habit, she still watches TV usually.

A. Because                 B. Although                 C. Or                        D. But

**Exercise 8. Fill in each blank with one of the conjunctions “and/ or/ but/ so/ because/ although” to complete the sentences.**

1. Is her child a boy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a girl?

2. I forgot to bring the map, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I got lost.

3. He failed the examination \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he didn't study hard.

4. Lien won the match \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she was injured.

5. My new classmate is quite friendly \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ sociable.

6. I don' t like watching films on TV \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I like watching them at the cinema.

7. She likes watching cartoons \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ they are colorful and funny.

8. He helps his friends a lot \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he is very busy.

**Exercise 9. Match the sentences in A with the correct answers in B.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **A** | **B** |
| 1. We wanted to go to the show | a. because they are quick and easy. |
| 2. I often make omelettes | b. although they are not very healthy. |
| 3. Shall we go to the cinema | c. and watch the film you were talking about? |
| 4. Burgers are very tasty | d. but there weren't any seats left. |
| 5. My neighbours are friendly | e. or at the football match? |
| 6. Do you know if he's at home | f. because he laughs in his sleep. |
| 7. Pick me up early, please, | g. but they are noisy. |
| 8. We know he has great dreams | h. so we don't get there late. |

**Exercise 10. Circle the correct option to complete the sentence.**

1. I'd love to stay **(so /and***I***but)**I have to catch my bus.

2. His hot chocolate was too hot **(so / and / but)**he put some cold milk in it.

3.**(Or/ Although/ Because) we**had an umbrella, we got extremely wet.

4. I only passed my exam **(because***I***but***I***although)**you helped me.

5. They were hungry **(but***I***because***I***so)**they made some sandwiches.

6. We can go to the pool **(and***I***but***I***or)**we can go horse-riding, whichever you prefer.

7. She didn't want him to see her **(and / so / although)**she hid behind a plant.

8. He's in the town centre **(so***I***because***I***but)**he wants to look for shoes.

9. I'm definitely coming tonight, **(or***I***because***I***although)**I could be a bit late.

10. We can go to the shop before we go to Clare's house **(and / or / so)**go to Clare's house first to see if she needs anything. What do you think?

**Exercise 11. Complete the sentence with:***however, otherwise, therefore.*

1. I wanted to go for a walk; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, it started raining.

2. I need to finish this project; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I won't meet the deadline.

3. She missed her flight; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_,         she had to book another one.

4. He didn't like the book; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_,         he still finished reading it.

5. I don't like coffee; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I would have ordered a latte.

6. She forgot her umbrella; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, she got soaked in the rain.

7. He needs to practice more; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, he won't be ready for the game.

8. I want to go to the beach; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, it’s too cold outside.

9. She's not feeling well; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, she's staying home from work.

10. He's allergic to seafood; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, he doesn’t want to go to the restaurant with us.

**Exercise 12. Fill in the blank with “however,” “otherwise,” “therefore,” “and,” “but,” “or,” “so,” or “because”.**

1. I wanted to go to the party, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I had to study for my exam.

2. She loves to travel \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ try new foods.

3. He didn't have any cash, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he had to use his credit card.

4. She needs to exercise regularly \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she wants to stay healthy.

5. I love ice cream, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I’m lactose intolerant.

6. He wants to go to the beach, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it's too far from his house.

7. She forgot her phone at home; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, she couldn't call her friend.

8. I can't decide what to wear; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I would have been ready by now.

9. He needs to finish his homework; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, he won't be able to watch TV.

10. The restaurant was busy, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ we decided to go to a different one.

11. I want to go to the beach; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, it's raining.

12. She wants to go on vacation to Hawaii, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she may choose to go to Mexico instead.

13. He didn't like the movie, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he left early.

14. He's not feeling well; \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, he will have a day off.

15. She likes to read books, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she also likes to write her own stories.

**Exercise 13. Read the text and fill in the blanks with the words in the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **important** | **Teenagers** | **guidance** | **pressure** | **important** |
| **academic** | **strong** | **challenging** | **exams** | **academic** |

Being a teenager can be a (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ time         in one's life. It's a period of transition from childhood to adulthood, with many physical, emotional, and social changes occurring. (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ want to do with their lives, and how they fit into the world around them.

One of the biggest challenges that teenagers face is peer (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. They want to fit in with their friends and be accepted by theft peers, and this can often lead to them making choices that may not be in their best interest. It's (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for teenagers to learn how to make their own decisions and stand up for themselves, even if it means going against the crowd. Teenagers are also facing the pressures of (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ performance and preparing for their future. They may be feeling the stress of trying to maintain good, grades, studying for (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and deciding what career path to take. It's important for teenagers to have a support system in place, whether it's their family, friends, or a school counselor, to help them navigate these challenges.

Overall, being a teenager is a complex and often difficult time in one's life. It's important for teenagers to have a (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ support system, develop healthy coping mechanisms, and learn how to make their own decisions. With the right (8) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and support, teenagers can navigate these challenges and emerge as confident, capable adults.

**Exercise 14. Read the text and choose the correct answer.**

If parents bring up a child with the sole aim of turning the child into a genius, they will cause a disaster. According to several scientists, this is one of the biggest mistakes which ambitious parents make. Generally, the child will be only too aware of what his parents expect, and will fail. Unrealistic parental expectations can cause great damage to children.

However, if parents are not too unrealistic about what they expect their children to do, but are ambitious in a sensible way, the child may succeed in doing very well - especially if the parents are very supportive of their child.

Michael is very lucky. He is crazy about music, and his parents help him a lot by taking him to concerts and arranging private piano and violin lessons for him. They even drive him 50 kilometers twice a week for violin lessons. Michael's mother knows very little about music, but his father plays the trumpet in a large orchestra. However, he never makes Michael enter music competitions if he is unwilling.

Winston, Michael's friend, however, is not so lucky. Both his parents are successful musicians, and they set too high a standard for Winston. They want their son to be as successful as they are and so they enter him for every piano competition held. They are very unhappy when he does not win. Winston is always afraid that he will disappoint his parents and now he always seems quiet and unhappy.

1. One of the serious mistakes parents can make is to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. push their child into trying too much

B. help their child to become a genius

C. make their child become a musician

D. neglect their child's education

2. Parents' ambition for their children is not wrong if they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. force their children into achieving success

B. themselves have been very successful

C. understand and help their children sensibly

D. arrange private lessons for their children

3. Michael is fortunate in that \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. his father is a musician

B. his parents are quite rich

C. his mother knows little about music

D. his parents help him in a sensible way

4. Winston's parents push their son so much and he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. has won a lot of piano competitions

B. cannot learn much music from them

C. has become a good musician

D. is afraid to disappoint them

5. The two examples given in the passage illustrate the principle that \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. successful parents always have intelligent children

B. successful parents often have unsuccessful children

C. parents should let the child develop in the way he wants

D. parents should spend more money on the child's education

**Exercise 15. Read the text carefully. Then du the tasks.**

Stress isn't just a problem for adults. Young people, however, are also suffering from stress with different causes. Below are some factors that contribute to those youngsters’ unhealthy levels of stress.

**School Pressure**

Teenagers often feel stressed about academic and extracurricular demands. Students feel pressure to complete daily homework, finish projects and study for exams. In addition to the quest for good grades, teens may also participate in extracurricular activities, such as sports, student council, cheerleading and clubs. The added pastimes may contribute to teenage stress and anxiety if the activities are competitive and require scheduling that cuts into study and relaxation time.

**Peer Pressure**

Although teens may have a solid group of friends, their peers may pressure them to hang out instead of studying or experimenting with drugs, alcohol or sexual activities that go against their morals or family rules. Peer pressure, bullying on campus and harassment may distract teens from studying, leading them to feel additional stress and anxiety.

**Family Problems**

Teenagers can also feel stress at home because of family pressures and problems. Arguments with siblings, disagreements with parents over rules and expectations and the need to consistently care for younger siblings may also contribute to teen stress.

**Sense of Loss**

Teens may also feel stress and anxiety when experiencing a sense of loss. “Loss” can mean the end of a relationship, friendship or cherished extracurricular activity. Breaking up with a boyfriend or best friend, for example, may lead them to doubt their self-worth or feel anxious about attending school or social functions because of their change in social status.

**A. Decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **True** | **False** |
| 1. Stress is a problem of both adults and young people. |  |  |
| 2. Youngsters can't be stressed if they do well in their classes. |  |  |
| 3. Peer pressure can make teens unable to concentrate on studying. |  |  |
| 4. The family is always the best place, so it doesn't cause stress for teenagers. |  |  |
| 5. Some problems in social relationships can lead teens to doubt or anxiety. |  |  |

**B. Answer the questions.**

1. What can distract teens from studying?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. What are family problems that put teens under pressure?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. What can “loss” mean?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. Why can teens doubt their self-worth after a broken relationship?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 16. Make the sentences using a conjunction:***but; and; or; so; yet.*

1. We know him. We know his friends.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. The coat was soft. The coat was warm.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. It is stupid to do that. It is quite unnecessary.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. I wanted to go. He wanted to stay.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. Your arguments are strong. They don't convince me.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. You can go there by bus. You can go there by train.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. I was feeling tired. I went to bed when I got home.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. I took a book with me on my holiday. I didn't read a single page.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. I want to go to the beach. The weather is nice.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. I don't like spicy food. I always ask for mild salsa.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

11. He's allergic to dairy. He can't eat ice cream.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

12. He wants to buy a car. He can't afford it right now.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 17. Combine the two sentences in one using the conjunction in brackets.**

1. I'm tired. I'm going to bed early tonight. (so)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. She loves to read. She doesn't have much time for it. (but)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. I want to learn English. I'm taking an English class. (therefore)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. The weather is nice. We're going to have a picnic in the park. (so)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. She studied hard. She passed the exam. (therefore)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. I need to get some work done. I keep getting distracted. (but)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. Would you like a cake? Would you like an ice cream? (or)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. She is a great cook. She doesn't like to bake. (but)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. He went to the bakery. He bought some bread. (and)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. He loves to travel. He doesn't like flying. (however)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

11. have a headache. I'm going to take some medicine. (therefore)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

12. She’s not feeling well. She's going to the doctor. (so)

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **UNIT 4. ETHNIC GROUPS OF VIETNAM**  **I. VOCABULARY** | | | |
| **Word** | **Type** | **Pronunciation** | **Meaning** |
| **communal house** | n | **/kəˈmjuːnl haʊs/** | nhà rông, nhà sinh hoạt cộng đồng |
| **Ex:** We spent hours in **communal house** to talk with local people. *Chúng tôi dành hàng giờ ở nhà sinh hoạt cộng đồng để nói chuyện với người dân địa phương.* | | | |
| **costume** | n | **/ˈkɒstjuːm/** | trang phục |
| **Ex:** She wore a traditional **costume** of bright pink silk. *Cô* *mặc một bộ trang phục truyền thống bằng lụa màu hồng tươi.* | | | |
| **crop** | n | **/krɒp/** | vụ mùa, vụ trồng trọt |
| **Ex:** The **strawberry** crop is now in. *Hiện đã vào vụ dâu tây.* | | | |
| **ethnic (group)** | adj | **/ˈeθnɪk/ (/ɡruːp/)** | (nhóm) dân tộc |
| **Ex:** Viet Nam has 54 **ethnic groups**. *Việt Nam có 54 dân tộc anh em.* | | | |
| **feature** | n | **/ˈfiːtʃər/** | nét, đặc điểm |
| **Ex:** A notable **feature** of the church is its unusual bell tower. *Một đặc điểm đáng chú ý cùa nhà thờ là tháp chuông đặc biệt của nó.* | | | |
| **flute** | n | **/fluːt/** | cây sáo (nhạc cụ) |
| **Ex:** He is playing the **flute**. *Anh ẩy đang thổi sáo.* | | | |
| **folk** | adj | **/fəʊk/** | thuộc về dân gian, truyền thống |
| **Ex:** **Folk** songs are a part of our common heritage. *Các bài hát dân ca là một phần di sản chung cùa chúng ta.* | | | |
| **gong** | n | **/ɡɒŋ/** | cái cồng, cái chiêng |
| **Ex:** You can visit Gia Lai to enjoy the **gong** festival. *Bạn có thể ghé thăm Gia Lai để thưởng thức lễ hội cồng chiêng.* | | | |
| **harvest** | n | **/ˈhɑːrvɪst/** | vụ mùa |
| **Ex:** We have a very good **harvest** this year. *Năm nay chúng tôi có một vụ mùa bội thu.* | | | |
| **highland** | n | **/ˈhaɪlənd/** | vùng cao nguyên |
| **Ex:** He is an English teacher in the Central **Highlands** area. *Anh ấy là giáo viên tiếng Anh ở khu vực Tây Nguyên.* | | | |
| **livestock** | n | **/ˈlaɪvstɒk/** | gia súc |
| **Ex:** The heavy rains and flooding killed scores of **livestock**. *Mưa lớn và lũ lụt đã giết chết rất nhiều gia súc.* | | | |
| **minoriry** | n | **/maɪˈnɒrəti/** | dân tộc thiểu số |
| **Ex:** Lahu, Mang, and Brau are ethnic **minority** peoples in Viet Nam. *Lahu, Mang, và Brau là các nhóm người dân tộc thiếu số ở Việt Nam.* | | | |
| **overlook** | v | **/ˌəʊvəˈlʊk/** | nhìn ra, đối diện |
| **Ex:** We can **overlook** the sea from here. *Chúng ta có thể nhìn ra biển từ đây.* | | | |
| **post** | n | **/pəʊst/** | cột, trụ |
| **Ex:** The lamp **post** got bent in the crash. *Cột đèn bị cong do vụ tai nạn.* | | | |
| **raise** | v | **/reɪz/** | chăn nuôi |
| **Ex:** We **raise** turkeys mainly for the Christmas market. *Chúng tôi nuôi gà tây chủ yếu đế bán vào dịp Giáng sinh.* | | | |
| **soil** | n | **/sɔɪl/** | đất trồng |
| **Ex:** The **soil** here is very poor. *Đất ở đây rất nghèo dinh dưỡng.* | | | |
| **staircase** | n | **/ˈsteəkeɪs/** | cầu thang bộ |
| ***Ex:*** They walked down the **staircase** together. *Họ cùng nhau bước xuống cầu thang.* | | | |
| **statue** | n | **/ˈstætʃuː/** | tượng |
| ***Ex:***This **statue** is made of bronze. *Bức tượng này được làm bằng đồng.* | | | |
| **stilt house** | n | **/stɪlt haʊs/** | nhà sàn |
| ***Ex:*** We are meeting in our **stilt house**. *Chúng tôi đang họp mặt ở nhà sàn.* | | | |
| **terraced** | adj | **/ˈterəst/** | có hình bậc thang |
| ***Ex:*** The landscape consists of low hills with **terraced** fields. *Cảnh quan bao gồm những ngọn đồi thấp và ruộng bậc thang.* | | | |
| **weave** | v | **/wiːv/** | dệt, đan, kết lại |
| ***Ex:*** Workers **weave** silk thread into beautiful shirts. *Những người công nhân dệt những sợi tơ thành những chiếc áo đẹp.* | | | |
| **wooden** | adj | **/ˈwʊdn/** | bằng gỗ |
| ***Ex:*** The room was full of **wooden** furniture. *Căn phòng chứa đầy đồ nội thất bằng gỗ.* | | | |

**II. WORD FORM**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Word** | **Related words** | **Transcription** | **Meaning** |
| **complicated (adj)**  tinh vi, phức tạp | complicate (v) | /ˈkɒmplɪkeɪt/ | làm phức tạp |
| complication (n) | /ˌkɒmplɪˈkeɪʃn/ | sự phức tạp? sự rắc rối |
| **ethnic (adj)**  (nhóm) dân tộc | ethnically (adv) | /ˈeθnɪkli/ | về mặt dân tộc |
| ethnology (n) | /eθˈnɒlədʒi/ | dân tộc học |
| ethnologist (n) | /eθˈnɒlədʒɪst/ | nhà dân tộc học |
| ethnological (adj) | /ˌeθnəˈlɒdʒɪkl/ | thuộc về dân tộc học |
| **curious (adj)**  tò mò,  muốn tìm hiểu | curiously (adv) | /ˈkjʊəriəslɪ/ | tò mò, hiếu kỳ |
| curiousness (n) | /ˈkjʊəriəsnɪs/ | tính tò mò, tính kỳ dị |
| curiosity (n) | /ˌkjʊəriˈɒsəti/ | sự tò mò, tính tò mò |
| **tradition (n)** truyền thống | traditional (adj) | /trəˈdɪʃənl/ | thuộc về truyền thống |
| traditionalism (adv) | /trəˈdɪʃənəlɪzəm/ | chủ nghĩa truyên thống |
| traditionalist (n) | /trəˈdɪʃənəlɪst/ | người theo chu nghĩa truyền thống |
| **speciality (n)**  đặc sản | special (adj) | /ˈspeʃl/ | đặc biệt, riêng biệt |

**III. GRAMMAR**

**1. Questions (Một số dạng câu hỏi)**

**a. Câu hỏi Yes/ No (Yes/ No Questions)**

***Cấu trúc:***

|  |
| --- |
| **Auxiliary Verb (Do/ Does/ Did/ Will /...) + S + V?**  **Yes, S + auxiliary verb.**  **No, S + auxiliary verb + not.** |
| **Be + S + adj/N...? - Yes, S + be. / No, S + be + not.** |

***E.g:****-* Will she be here tomorrow? - Yes, she will.

*(Có ấy sẽ tới đây vào ngày mai chứ? - Vâng, cô ấy sẽ đến.)*

        - Was Lan sick yesterday? - No, she was not.

*(Có phải hôm qua Lan ốm không? - Không, cô ấy không ốm.)*

        Did Hung go to school yesterday? - No, he didn't.

*(Hùng có đi học ngày hôm qua không? - Không, anh ấy không.)*

**b. Câu hỏi vói Wh (Wh-questions)**

Khi cần hỏi rõ ràng hơn và có câu trả lời cụ thể hơn, ta dùng câu hỏi với các từ để hỏi.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **What:**cái gì  **Which:**cái nào  **Who:**ai  **Whose:**của ai (hỏi về sở hữu)  **Why:**tại sao  **Where:**ở đâu | **When:**khi nào  **How many/ How much:**bao nhiêu (hỏi về số lượng)  **How much:**bao nhiêu (giá cả)  **How long:**bao lâu  **How far:**bao xa |

***Cấu trúc:***

|  |
| --- |
| **Wh-questions + be + S + adj/ N? Wh-questions + auxiliary verb + S+ V?** |

*E.g:*         What is this? *(Cái gì đây?* hoặc *Đây là cái gì?)*

Where do you live? *(Anh sống ở đâu?)*

When do you see him? *(Cậu gặp anh ta khi nào?)*

What are you doing? *(Anh đang làm gì thế?)*

Why does she like him? *(Tại sao cô ta thích anh ta?)*

**c. Cách dùng cụ thể**

**\* Who hoặc What: câu hỏi chủ ngữ**

Đây là câu hỏi khi muốn biết chủ ngữ hay chủ thể của hành động.

***Who/What + V + …?***

***E.g.***        What happened last night? *(Chuyện gì đã xảy ra tối qua)*

Who opened the door? *(Ai đã mở cửa?)*

**\* Whom hoặc What: câu hỏi tân ngữ**

Đây là câu hỏi khi muốn biết tân ngữ hay đối tượng tác động của hành động.

***Whom/ What + do/ did/ does... + S + V +...?***

***Lưu ý:*** Trong tiếng Anh viết bắt buộc phải dùng **whom**mặc dù trong tiếng Anh nói có thể dùng **who**thay cho **whom**trong mẫu câu trên.

***E.g:***         What did Trang buy at the store? *(Trang đã mua gì ở cửa hàng?)*

Whom does Lan know from the UK? *(Lan biết ai từ Vương quoc Anh?)*

**\* When, Where, How và Why: Câu hỏi bổ ngữ**

Dùng khi muốn biết nơi chốn, thời gian, lý do, cách thức của hành động.

***When/ Where/ Why/ How + do/ does/ did...+ S + V + bổ ngữ (tân ngữ)?***

***E.g:***         How did you get to school today?

*(Hôm nay bạn đi đến trường bằng cách nào?)*

When did he move to Ha Noi?

*(Cậu ấy đã chuyển tới Hà Nội khi nào vậy?)*

**\* Câu hỏi với Who, Whom, Whose**

**- Who**và **Whom**đều dùng để hỏi ai/ người nào, nhưng **Who**dùng thay cho người, giữ nhiệm vụ chủ từ trong câu, còn **Whom**giữ nhiệm vụ túc từ của động từ theo sau.

***E.g:***         Who can answer that question? *(Ai có thể trả lời câu hỏi đó?)*

**(Who***là chủ từ của động từ***can)**

Whom do you meet this morning? *(Anh gặp ai sáng nay?)*

**(Whom***là túc từ của động từ***meet)**

***Lưu ý:*** Trong văn nói, có thể dùng who trong cả hai trường hợp chủ từ và túc từ.

***E.g.***          Who(m) do they help this morning? *(Họ giúp ai sáng nay?)*

- Động từ trong câu hỏi với **who**ở dạng xác định. Ngược lại động từ trong câu hỏi với **whom**phải ở dạng nghi vấn:

***E.g:***         Who is going to Ha Noi with Mai? *(Ai đang đi Hà Nội cùng với Mai vậy)?*

With whom is she going to London? (= Who(m) did she go to London with?)

**- Whose**là hình thức sở hữu của **who.**Nó được dùng để hỏi “của ai”.

***E.g:***         Whose is this umbrella? *(Cái ô này của ai?)*

**- Whose**có thế được dùng như một tính từ nghi vấn, theo sau **whose**là một danh từ. ***E.g:***         Whose pen are you using? *(Bạn đang dùng bút của ai đấy?)*

Whose books are they reading? *(Họ đang đọc sách của ai?)*

**\* Câu hỏi với What, Which**

**What**và **Which**đều có nghĩa chung là “cái gì, cái nào”. Tuy vậy **which**có một số giới hạn. Người nghe phải chọn trong giới hạn ấy để trả lời. Câu hỏi với **what**thì không có giới hạn. Người nghe có quyền trả lời theo ý thích của mình.

***E.g:***         What do you often have for breakfast? *(Bạn thường ăn điếm tâm món gì?)*

Which will you have, tea or coffee? *(Anh muốn dùng gì, trà hay cà phê?)*

**What**và **Which**còn có the là một tính từ nghi vấn. Khi sử dụng tính từ nghi vấn phải dùng với một danh từ. Cách dùng giống như trường hợp **whose**nêu trên.

***E.g:***         What colour do you like? *(Bạn thích màu gì?)*

Which way to the station, please? *(Cho hỏi đường nào đi đến ga ạ?)*

**Which**có thể dùng để nói về người. Khi ấy nó có nghĩa “người nào, ai”.

***E.g:***         Which of you can't do this exercise?

*Em nào (trong số các em) không làm được bài tập này?*

**2*.*Countable and uncountable nouns (Danh tù’ đếm được và không đếm được)**

**2.1. Countable nouns (Danh từ đếm đưọc)**

**• Định nghĩa**

- Danh từ đếm được là những danh từ chỉ sự vật, sự việc riêng lẻ tách rời có thể đếm được.

***E.g:*** an apple (1 quả táo), a pen (1 cái bút), a table (1 cái bàn), an egg (1 quả trứng), a cup (1 chiếc cốc), two books (2 cuốn sách), five babies (5 em bé)...

**• Phân loại**

- Danh từ đếm được được phân thành 2 loại: ***danh từ số ít và danh từ số nhiều.***

**Danh từ số ít**chỉ một cái, một con, một vật..., thường đi với mạo từ **a/an.**

***E.g:*** a cake (một cái bánh), an umbrella (một chiếc ô)...

**• Quy tắc hình thành danh từ số nhiều từ danh từ đếm được so ít**

***Quy tắc 1:***Danh tù’ số ít thường được chuyển sang dạng số nhiều bằng cách thêm **s”.**

***E.g:***         a pen 🡪 pens                a book 🡪 books

an egg 🡪 eggs        an ant 🡪 ants

a boy 🡪 boys                a girl 🡪 girls

***Quy tắc 2:***Thêm **“es”**vào tận cùng của danh từ kết thúc bằng các âm **o, s, ss, ch, x, sh, z.**

***E.g:***         a class 🡪 classes        a tomato 🡪 tomatoes

a box 🡪 boxes                a watch 🡪 watches

***Quy tắc 3:***Danh từ kết thúc bằng **“y”**chúng ta chuyển thành **“i + es”.**

***E.g:***         a candy 🡪 candies                a baby 🡪 babies

a country 🡪 countries                a family 🡪 families

***Ngoại trừ:****Các trường hợp danh từ kết thúc “y” mà trước nó lại là một nguyên âm*🡪*khi chuyển sang số nhiều, ta chỉ thêm “s”*

***E.g:***         a boy 🡪 boys                a key 🡪 keys

***Quy tắc 4:***Danh từ có tận cùng là **f, fe**ta chuyển thành “+ **ves”**

***E.g:***         a knife 🡪 knives        a wife 🡪 wives                a wolf 🡪 wolves

***Quy tắc 5:***Một số danh từ đặc biệt không theo các quy tắc trên.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Danh từ số ít** | **Danh tù’ số nhiều** | **Ý nghĩa** |
| a man | men | đàn ông |
| a woman | women | phụ nữ |
| a child | children | trẻ con |
| a sheep | sheep | con cừu |
| a foot | feet | bàn chân |
| a tooth | teeth | răng |
| a person | people | người |
| a mouse | mice | con chuột |
| a goose | geese | con ngỗng |
| an ox | oxen | con bò đực |
| a fish | fish | con cá |
| a bacterium | bacteria | vi khuẩn |

**2.2. Uncountable nouns (Danh từ không đếm được)**

**• Định nghĩa**

*Danh từ không đếm được là những danh từ chỉ những sự vật, hiện tượng mà chúng ta không thể đếm được tách rời ví dụ như danh từ chỉ chất liệu, chất lỏng, chất sệt, chất bột hay các danh tù' trừu tượng.*

*E.g:* milk (sữa), sugar (đường), happiness (niềm vui), advice (lời khuyên), money (tiền), bread (bánh mì)...

**• Phân loại**

*Khác với danh từ đếm được, các danh từ không đếm được chỉ có dạng số ít. Danh từ không đếm được được chia làm 5 nhóm điển hình như sau:*

**Nhóm 1:**Danh từ chỉ đồ ăn: food (đồ ăn), meat (thịt), water (nước), rice (gạo), sugar (đường), …

**Nhóm 2:**Danh từ chỉ khái niệm trừu tượng: help (sự giúp đỡ), fun (niềm vui), information (thông tin), knowledge (kiến thức), patience (sự kiên trì), ...

**Nhóm 3:**Danh từ chỉ lĩnh vực, môn học: Mathematics (môn Toán), Ethics (Đạo đức học), Music (Âm nhạc), History (Lịch sử), grammar (ngữ pháp), ...

**Nhóm 4:**Danh từ chỉ hiện tượng tự nhiên: thunder (sấm), snow (tuyết), heat (nhiệt độ), wind (gió), light (ánh sáng), ...

**Nhóm 5:**Danh từ chỉ hoạt động: swimming (bơi), walking (đị bộ), reading (đọc), cooking (nấu ăn), sleeping (ngủ), …

**\* Chú ý:**Có một số danh từ có thể dùng như danh từ đếm được và danh từ không đếm được cùng lúc với ý nghĩa khác nhau:

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Paper** | He reads a paper. *(Anh ấy đọc một tờ báo.)*  He bought some paper. *(Anh ấy mua một vài tờ giấy viết.)* |
| **Work** | Mark is finding work. *(Mark đang tìm việc.)*  Mozart composed many works. *(Mozart đã sáng tác nhiều tác phẩm.)* |
| **Hair** | There's a hair in the cup of tea. *(Có một cọng tóc trong cốc trà.)*  My hair is so long. *(Tóc tôi dài quá.)* |
| **Experience** | We had many interesting experiences at the party.  *(Chúng tôi có nhiều hoạt động thú vị trong bữa tiệc.)*  It's very important to have experience in work.  *(Có kinh nghiệm trong công việc là điều rất quan trọng.)* |

*Trong một số trường hợp, danh từ không đếm được có thế đi kèm với a/an:*

a pity: một điều đáng tiếc                a shame: một sự xấu hổi

a wonder: một điều ngạc nhiên                a fear: một điều đáng sợ, đáng lo ngại

a help: một sự giúp đỡ                        a relief: một sự nhẹ nhõm

**IV. PRONUNCIATION**

**Sound /k/ and /g/**

**1. Cách phát âm /k/ và /g/**

**a. Cách phát âm âm /k/**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Bước 1:** Để khẩu hình miệng mở tự nhiên, phần cuống lưỡi nâng lên chạm vào phần ngạc mềm ở trên, chặn luồng hơi đi ra.  **Bước 2:**Nhanh chóng hạ lưỡi xuống để luồng hơi thoát ra, tạo thành âm /k/, dây thanh quản không rung. | https://lh3.googleusercontent.com/iFLLehFrm9WvWVR49GdKKohv62wbgNyypznN_ARw6V2TAIIu-PjrFiQEULc4RFSXqxqNQqxsipP7xOtA9zbDxivPq5KvkJVKllrWrkCg1o6CJJ1OjIayWXyB1L2l_vom2bi6jDYVt8gIqGroticQyA=s800 |

- /k/ là một âm vô thanh, nên khi tập phát âm có thế đưa một tờ giấy gần sát miệng để kiểm tra. Nếu dây thanh không rung và giấy bị luồng hơi bật bay là phát âm đúng.

**• *Tập phát âm với các ví dụ sau:***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| account | /əˈkaʊnt/ | tài khoản |
| think | /θɪŋk/ | suy nghĩ |
| cold | /kəʊld/ | lạnh |
| talk | /tɔːk/ | nói chuyện |

**b. Cách phát âm âm /g/**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Bước 1:** Để khẩu hình miệng mở tự nhiên, phần cuống lưỡi nâng lên chạm vào phần ngạc mềm ở trên, chặn luồng hơi đi ra.  **Bước 2:** Sau đó lưỡi nhanh chóng hạ xuống đẩy mạnh luồng hơi thoát ra ngoài và tạo thành âm /g/ với dây thanh quản rung. | https://lh4.googleusercontent.com/bQtBd5afrcklrJ-vG3IL7JKZrF5lHeBkQDf5dSIZptI7qJb75IwXW45gPSOttrqwGRdd1cxy-0adlGfPXtuRmaTo8E0FX6Od0GQp8BdAtEbQAcWwUQTjwKulPtGJSmgfJm4K4cV2f32u6Edss0XizQ=s800 |

**• *Tập phát âm với các ví dụ sau:***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| give | /gɪv/ | đưa cho |
| gun | /ɡʌn/ | súng |
| garden | /ˈɡɑːdn/ | vườn |
| pig | /pɪg/ | con lọn |
| agree | /əˈɡriː/ | đồng ý |

**2. So sánh cách phát âm phụ âm /k/ và /g/.**

**Giống nhau:**

-/k/ và /g/ là cặp phụ âm có cùng cấu hình miệng, lưỡi (miệng hơi mở, phần cuống lưỡi nâng lên chạm vào ngạc mềm chặn luồng hơi đi ra).

**Khác nhau:**

-/k/ là phụ âm *vô thanh,* khi phát âm luồng hơi đẩy ra mạnh và không làm dây thanh quản rung.

- /g/ là phụ âm *hữu thanh,* khi phát âm luồng hơi đẩy ra yếu và làm dây thanh quản rung.

**3. Các dấu hiệu nhận biết âm /k/ và /g/.**

**Dấu hiệu 1:**“k” được phát âm là /k/ khi đặt ở bất kỳ vị trí đầu một từ, giữa từ và cả cuối từ.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| keep | /ki:p/ | giữ |
| kindergarten | /ˈkɪndəɡɑːtn/ | nhà trẻ |
| kitchen | /ˈkɪtʃɪn/ | phòng bếp |
| darken | /ˈdɑːkən/ | làm tối, làm u ám |
| cooker | /ˈkʊkər/ | nồi cơm |
| lock | /lɒk/ | khoá |
| attack | /əˈtæk/ | cuộc tấn công |

**Dấu hiệu 2:**“c” được phát âm là /k/ khi đặt ở đầu hoặc giữa từ.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| column | /ˈkɒləm/ | cột |
| bacon | /ˈbeɪkən/ | thịt lợn hun khói |
| conclusion | /kənˈkluːʒn/ | kết luận |
| discard | /dɪˈskɑːrd/ | vứt bỏ |

**Dấu hiệu 3:**Khi “cc” theo sau là nguyên âm trừ “e” thì “cc” được phát âm là /k/.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| accountant | /əˈkaʊntənt/ | kể toán |
| acclaim | /əˈkleɪm/ | ngợi ca |
| accurate | /ˈækjərət | chính xác |
| occasion | /əˈkeɪʒn/ | dịp |

**Dấu hiệu 4:**“qu” sẽ được phát âm là /k/ trong những từ chứa “qu”.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| queue | /kjuː/ | xếp hàng |
| quay | /kiː/ | cầu tàu |
| antique | /ænˈtiːk/ | đồ cổ |
| technique | /tekˈniːk/ | kỹ thuật |

**Chú ý:**Âm /k/ câm khi từ có cấu tạo K+N.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| know | /nəʊ/ | biết |
| knee | /niː/ | đầu gối |
| knowledge | /ˈnɒlɪdʒ/ | sự hiểu biết |

**b. Dấu hiệu nhận biết âm /g/**

**Dấu hiệu:**“g” được đọc là /g/.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| gain | /ɡeɪn/ | thu được |
| garden | /ˈɡɑːrdn/ | khu vườn |
| jungle | /ˈdʒʌŋɡl/ | rùng rậm |
| negotiate | /nɪˈɡəʊʃieɪt/ | thương lượng, đàm phán |
| negative | /ˈneɡətɪv/ | tiêu cực, phủ định |

**Chú ý:**“g” câm (không được phát âm) khi G + M, N.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| foreign | /ˈfɒrən/ | nước ngoài |
| design | /dɪˈzaɪn/ | thiết kế |
| campaign | /kæmˈpeɪn/ | chiến dịch |
| sign | /saɪn/ | ký |

**V. PRACTICE**

**Exercise 1. Fill in the blank with a word containing sound /k/.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **accountant** | **knee** | **column** | **antique** |

1. I didn't have time to read the whole article - just the first         \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

2. John works as an \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for a large corporation.

3. My grandmother gave me an \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ clock that's been in our family for generations.

4. My \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ hurts after running in the marathon last weekend.

**Exercise 2. Fill in the blank with a word containing sound /g/.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **frogs** | **bags** | **girl** | **glass** |

1. The little \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ was         so excited to go to the park.

2. I accidentally dropped my \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and it shattered into pieces.

3. She packed her \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and left for her trip to Europe.

4. We could hear the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ croaking in the pond at night.

**Exercise 3. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases from the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **heritage** | **fields** | **festival** | **groups** | **turkeys** |
| **overlook** | **open-air market** | **communal** | **ethnic** | **traditional** |

1. We spent hours in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ house to talk with local people.

2. She wore a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ costume of bright pink silk.

3. Viet Nam has 54 ethnic \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

4. Folk songs are a part of our common \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

5. You can visit Gia Lai to enjoy the gong \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

6. Lahu, Mang, Brau are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_  minority people in Viet Nam.

7. We can \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the sea from here.

8. The local people often go to the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ every day.

9. We raise \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ mainly for the Christmas market.

10. The landscape consists of low hills with terraced \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 4. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases from the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **unique** | **terraced fields** | **folk dances** | **ethnic minorities** | **ornaments** |
| **diverse** | **specialty** | **costume** | **stilt houses** | **heritage site** |

1. The Nung mostly live in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ though they also live in earthen houses.

2. Five-coloured sticky rice is well-known as a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the north-western region of Viet Nam.

3. The goods in the open-air market are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. You can find almost everything there.

4. Thai cloth is well-known for being \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, colourful and strong.

5.*Xoe and Sap* are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of Thai ethnic minority people.

6. The \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the Nung is not as colorful as that of other ethnic groups.

7. My Son sanctuary has been recognized by UNESCO as a world \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

8. Thai women retain their traditional clothes including short vests, long black skirts, scarves, and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

9. Sa Pa is famous for the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ located in the mountainous area.

10. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ make up between 10 to 15 percent of the population in Viet Nam.

**Exercise 5. Put the words in brackets into the correct forms.**

1. Do you think the ethnic minorities people have their own customs and (traditional) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

2. Which ethnic group has the smallest (populate) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in Viet Nam.

3. Some ethnic peoples in the mountainous regions still keep their (tradition) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ way of fanning.

4. Which do you think is more (color) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the Tay's or Nung’s costume?

5. If you go to Sa Pa, you should try some (special) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the local people sold at the market.

6. The (minority) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ are         mainly concentrated in Northern uplands and Central Highlands.

7. I have two tickets to a gong (perform) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. Would you like to go?

8. Which ethnic group has larger (popular) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, Cho Ro or Chu Ru?

**Exercise 6. Fill in each blank with the correct word/phrase from the box.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **information** | **display area** | **stilt house** | **little bridges** |
| **cultural heritage** | **a tour** | **research** | **ethnic groups** |

Viet Nam Museum of Ethnology in Ha Noi offers an insight into 54 different ethnic groups of Viet Nam in an effort to preserve (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

The museum is full of (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ about         traditional Vietnamese ways of life of all the Vietnamese (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

The display hall shows everyday objects representing each ethnic group, a (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ center,         a library and an auditorium. Its indoor exhibition area provides you (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ which includes the Viet, Muong, Tay, Thai, H'Mong, Dao, Khmer, Cham, and Hoa ethnic groups.

The outdoor (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ presents         a variety of Vietnamese homes including a Tay (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and a Viet house, each separated by a small stream and reached via (8) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. The museum is suitable for children, and all documents and signs are translated into English and French.

**Exercise 7. Decide whether these nouns are countable (C) or uncountable (U).**

1. The **children**are playing games.                                \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. I don't like **orange juice**.\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. She prefers drinking **coffee**.\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. There's some **money**on the table.                                \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. My mother is baking **cakes**.\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. There are a lot of **ceiling fans**in our classroom.                \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. They need some glue to fix the door.                        \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. Have we got any **bread**?\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. He drank three big glasses of **wine**yesterday.                \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. How many **chairs**are there in the living room?                \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 8. Complete the sentences with***do/does/is /are/don't/doesn't/ isnt/arent.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you students? - Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

2. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_they         play soccer after school? - No, they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

3. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his         father a doctor? - Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

4. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ there         a well to the left your house? - No, there \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

5. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she         in the classroom? - Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

6. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the         trees behind their house? - No, they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

7. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Lan have Literature on Mondays and Tuesdays? - No, she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

8. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her         parents get up at 5 o'clock? - Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

9. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ there         any stores near Minh's house? - Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

10. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Ba's         apartment on the third floor? - No, it \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

11. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it         a beautiful house? - Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

12. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her         books small? - No, they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 9. Answer the following questions.**

1. Do they have a big breakfast every morning? - Yes, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

2. Do the students go to school at 6.30? - No, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

3. Are there any flowers in the garden? - Yes, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

4. Is her sister a good student? - No, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

5. Does Linh have Maths on Wednesdays and Thursdays? - Yes, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

6. Is the bank opposite the supermarket? - No, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

7. Is there a lake in front of their house? - Yes, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

8. Do Hoa and Huong play tennis after school? - No, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

9. Is Van's brother twenty years old? - Yes, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

10. Does Mr. Kha live in a big house in Ha Noi? - No, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 10. Make questions for the underlined parts in the sentences.**

1. I stayed in New Zealand for six months.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. She called the firemen because her cat stuck in a tree.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. I bought two kilos of oranges.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. John wrote about his grandparents.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. I watched a very good film on TV last night.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. She made some coffee for her mother.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. Susan gave the money to her brother.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. We went to school by bus.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. I was tired yesterday morning because I worked very hard.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. Mary invited a lot of people to the party.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 11. Choose the correct option to complete the sentence.**

1. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ language is spoken in Kenya?

A. which                B. who                        C. what                D. how

2. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is your blood type?

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

3. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ do you play tennis? - For exercise.

A. Which                B. Who                        C. Why                        D. How

4. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ can I buy some milk? - At the supermarket.

A. Which                B. Who                        C. Where                D. How

5. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ much do you weigh?

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

6. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ hat is this? - It's my brother's.

A. Which                B. Whose                C. What                D. How

7. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ can I park my car? - Over there.

A. Where                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

8. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ tall are you?

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

9. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ do you expect me to do?

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

10. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ do you like your tea? - I like it with cream and sugar.

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

11. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ picture do you prefer, this one or that one?

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

12. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is that woman? - I think she is a teacher.

A. Which                B. Who                        C. When                D. How

13. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ book is this? - It's mine.

A. Which                B. Who                        C. Whose                D. How

14. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ do you usually eat lunch? - At noon.

A. Which                B. When                C. What                D. How

15. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ do you wash clothes? - Every week.

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How often

16. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ does your father work? - At City Hall.

A. Where                B. Who                 C. What                D. How

17. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ usually gets up the earliest in your family?

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

18. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ do        you think of this hotel? - It's pretty good.

A. Which                B. Why                        C. What                D. How

19. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ do        you work at that company? - Because it’s near my house.

A. Which                B. Who                        C. Why                        D. Which

20. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ dances the best in your family?

A. Which                B. Who                        C. What                D. How

**Exercise 12. Make questions for the underlined parts in the sentences.**

1. My family usually go to pagodas on the first day of Tet.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. Tet lasts ten days.

3. Before Tet, people should clean and decorate their houses.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. People shouldn't eat duck meat at Tet because it brings unluckiness.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. We will visit our relatives on the second day of Tet.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. Mount Everest is over 60 million years old.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. The Grand Canyon is in Arizona. USA.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. Visitors can get to Angel Falls by boat.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. He plays volleyball three times a week.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

11. We have lived in New York for ten years.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

12. The weather in Stockholm has been perfect.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

13. He travelled to Mexico by train.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

14. play basketball every weekend.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

15. Last night I watched a basketball match on TV.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 13. Read the text and choose the correct answer.**

**Communal House (*Rong* House)**

The *Rong* House can only be (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in villages to the north of the Central Highlands, especially in Gia Lai and Kon Turn provinces. It is a large, imposing, beautifully decorated stilt house built (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the middle of the village. It is where community activities (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, meetings, wedding ceremonies, or praying ceremonies. It is also the place for reception of guests. The *Rong* House of each ethnic group has its own architectural style, design, and decor. Yet there are shared (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. In the village, it is often (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ house roofed with yellow-dried thatch leaves and having 8 big wood columns. The rafters are decorated with patterns of bright colours, depicting religious scenes, legendary stories about ancient heroes, stylized animals, and other familiar things of the village life. The most distinction of the decor of the *Rong* House is the (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the brilliant God of Sun. The *Rong* House is a (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the culture of Central Highlanders, an age-old and stable culture. The bigger the house, the wealthier the village is. It is a (8) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the whole village.

1. A. find                B. found                C.to find                D. finding

2. A. on                B. at                        C. in                        D. under

3. A. take place        B. take on                C. happens                D. occurs

4. A. designs                B. cultures                C. customs                D. features

5. A. a big                B. a bigger                C. the biggest                D. biggest

6. A. painting                B. photo                C. image                D. portrait

7. A. signal                B. symbol                C. sign                        D. scene

8. A. design                B. respect                C. proud                D. pride

**Exercise 14. Read the text again and answer the questions.**

Hoa Binh and Thanh Hoa are two main provinces where there are more than 1.4 million Muong people living. They speak the Muong language which belongs to the Mon - Khmer group. However, some of them also know the Kinh language. They cultivate mainly wet rice on terraced land, watered by small brooks. They also make handicrafts and exploit forest products such as mushrooms, dried fungus, and ammonium to improve their living condition.

Men dress in Indigo pajamas and women wear skirts with many colorful patterns knitted on. The Muong build their houses on stilts with 4-roof architecture, which are about six feet off the ground. They are wooden houses in the shade of big trees, huddling against the mountain, and looking out on their vast rice fields. Therefore, it is convenient for their living and farming. The Muong follow traditional religious animism, which means that they believe that non-living objects have spirits. They build altars in their houses to worship ancestral spirits and other supernatural spirits. One of their most important festivals is the “Going to the Fields” ceremony.

1. Which province do the Muong live in Viet Nam?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. Which language group does the Muong language belong to?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. What do they do to earn their living?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. Why are their houses convenient for their living and farming?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. How do the Muong believe in animism?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. What is one of their most important festivals?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 15. Read the text and then choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.**

In Viet Nam, a market is a trading place, but many markets are not only about buying and selling things. They reflect the life of the community. A traditional market is a social gathering point for people of all ages and it is a new and exciting experience for children, a trading place for local craftsmen, and a chance for young people to meet. People go to the traditional market not only to buy and sell things but also to eat, drink, play games, and socialize. For example, if you go to Sa Pa Market, which is the highlands in the north of Viet Nam, you can see people wearing their nicest clothes and spending all day long at the market. They buy things, play the flute, dance, and sing. This is also a time to meet, make friends or look for lovers. That is why this kind of gathering is also called "Love Market”. Some other countryside markets in the Mekong Delta are held on boats. Most of the goods are sold at a floating market. The most exciting time is in the early morning when boats arrive loaded up with agricultural products.

1. In Viet Nam, all markets are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. only trading places                                B. only about buying things

C. only about selling things                        D. not only about buying and selling things

2. A traditional market is a social gathering point for \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. young people                                 B. people of all ages

C. local craftsmen                                 D. children

3. What can people do at the traditional market?

A. Sell and buy things only.

B. Buy and sell things, eat, drink and play games.

C. Buy things and eat.

D. Buy and sell things, eat, drink, play games and socialize.

4. What do the ethnic people who go to Sa Pa Market do?

A. They wear their nicest clothes, buy things, play the flute, dance and sing.

B. They ride on a horse and sing.

C. They drink a lot of wine and dance.

D. They buy the nicest clothes at the market and look for lovers.

5. Some of the markets in the Mekong Delta are held \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_are called floating markets.

A. along the roads                                 B. on the paddy fields

C. on boats                                         D. in the morning

**Exercise 16a. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.**

***E.g:*** Which / group / has / largest /number *I* people / Viet Nam

🡪*Which group has the largest number of people in Viet Nam?*

1. some / group/ like / the Tay, Hmong, Dao /live *I* mostly/ mountainous/regions / north/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. “ethnic minority peoples”/ speak/ own languages/ have / own / life/ customs / and, / traditions/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. our country / government/ always / take care / people's life / especially the ethnic groups'/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. the Muong / Hoa Binh and Thanh Hoa / well-known /their / rich folk literature /traditional songs/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. many / ethnic minority children / in/ remote or mountainous areas / studying / at/ boarding schools/.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 16b. Write questions and answers from the given words.**

1. Which soup/ you/ like? - I / like/ chicken soup.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. Where/ Ann/ usually go/ the evening? - She/ usually/ go/ the cinema.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. Who/ Carol and Bill / visit/ Sundays? - They/ visit/ their grandparents.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. What/ David/ usually drink/ breakfast? - He/ usually/ drink/ coffee.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. When/ you/ watch TV? - I/ watch TV/ the evening.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. Why/ Rachel/ stay/ in bed? - She/ stay/ in bed/ because/ she/ be/ sick.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. How/ you/ go/ office? - I/ go/ office/ bicycle.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. Whose laptop/ your sister/ carry? - She/ carry/ mine.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 17. Make questions for the underlined words.**

1. The children swam in the lake.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. The glass fell off the table.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. They saw lions and tigers at the zoo.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. He left the party at 11 o'clock.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. John went to the beach last Sunday.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. He gave her a bunch of flowers for her birthday.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. The company sent the new worker to California.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. My sister dreamt about a monster last night.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. My grandmother heard a loud scream last night.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. We went to the History Museum.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

11. He fell because he slipped on a banana peel.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

12. The teacher was angry because he didn't do his homework.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

13. It took us about half an hour to get to school.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

14. She last rode a bike two weeks ago.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

15. I bought half a kilo of cheese.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **UNIT 5. OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS**  **I. VOCABULARY** | | | |
| **Word** | **Type** | **Pronunciation** | **Meaning** |
| **acrobatics** | n | **/ˌækrəˈbætɪks/** | xiếc, các động tác nhào lộn |
| **Ex:** Her **acrobatics** were greeted with loud applause. *Màn nhào lộn của cô được chào đón bằng những tràng vỗ tay lớn.* | | | |
| **admire** | v | **/ədˈmaɪər/** | khâm phục, ngưỡng mộ |
| **Ex:** I **admire** her for her bravery. *Tôi ngưỡng mộ sự dũng cảm của cô ấy.* | | | |
| **bad spirit** | n | **/bæd ˈspɪrɪt/** | điều xấu xa, ta ma |
| **Ex:** It was believed that people could be possessed by **bad spirits**. *Người ta tin rằng con người có thể bị ám bởi tà ma.* | | | |
| **bamboo pole** | n | **/ˌbæmˈbuː pəʊl/** | câu nêu |
| **Ex:** A green **bamboo pole** is used to represent the deity. *Cây nêu được dùng để tượng trưng cho vị thần.* | | | |
| **carp** | n | **/kɑːrp/** | con cá chép |
| **Ex:** They saw a little **carp** swimming in the stream. *Họ nhìn thấy một con cá chép nhỏ đang bơi trong dòng nước.* | | | |
| **coastal** | adj | **/ˈkəʊstl/** | thuộc miền ven biển, duyên hải |
| **Ex:** Many coastal towns were damaged by the hurricane. *Nhiều thị trấn ven biển đã bị hư hại bởi cơn bão.* | | | |
| **ceremony** | n | **/ˈserəməni/** | nghi thức, nghi lễ |
| **Ex:** The **ceremony** opened with a fanfare of trumpets. *Buổi lễ mở đầu bằng tiếng kèn trống rộn ràng.* | | | |
| **chase away** | v | **/tʃeɪs əˈweɪ/** | xua đuổi |
| **Ex:** This will **chase away** the bad spirits. *Điều này sẽ xua đuổi những linh hồn xấu.* | | | |
| **contestant** | n | **/kənˈtestənt/** | thí sinh, người thi đấu |
| **Ex:** A big clap for our last **contestant**! *Một tràng pháo tay lớn cho thỉ sinh cuối cùng của chúng ta!* | | | |
| **decorative** | adj | **/ˈdekəreɪtɪv/** | có tính trang trí, để trang trí |
| **Ex:** She drew a **decorative** border around the picture. *Cô ấy vẽ đường viền trang trí xung quanh bức tranh.* | | | |
| **family bonding** | n | **/ˈfæməli ˈbɒndɪŋ/** | sự gắn kết tình cảm giả đình |
| **Ex:** **Family bonding** is important for building strong relationships. *Sự gắn kết gia đình là quan trọng để xây dựng mối quan hệ bền chặt.* | | | |
| **family reunion** | n | **/ˈfæməli ˌriːˈjuːniən/** | cuộc sum họp ra đình |
| **Ex:**We have a **family reunion** every New Year's Day. *Gia đình chúng tôi có cuộc sum họp vào ngày đầu năm mới.* | | | |
| **festival goer** | n | **/ˈfestɪvl ˈɡəʊər/** | người đi xem lễ hội |
| ***Ex:*** Thousands of **festival goers** come here every year. *Hàng ngàn người tham gia lễ hội đến đây mỗi năm.* | | | |
| **lantern** | n | **/ˈlæntərn/** | đèn lồng |
| ***Ex:*** She carried a **lantern** to light her way. *Cô mang theo một chiếc đèn lồng để thắp sáng đường đi của mình.* | | | |
| **longevity** | n | **/lɔːnˈdʒevəti/** | sự sống, tuổi thọ |
| **Ex:** We wish our mom both health and **longevity**! *Chúng tôi chúc mẹ của mình sức khỏe và trường thọ!* | | | |
| **martial arts** | n | **/ˌmɑːrʃl ˈɑːrt/** | võ thuật |
| **Ex:** **Martial arts** originated in the East. *Võ thuật có nguồn gốc từ phương Đông.* | | | |
| **monk** | n | **/mʌŋk/** | nhà sư |
| **Ex:** The man was a **monk** from Emei Mountain. *Người đàn ông đó là một nhà sư từ núi Emei.* | | | |
| **offering** | n | **/ˈɒfərɪŋ/** | đồ thờ cúng, lễ vật |
| ***Ex:*** They made sacrificial **offerings** to the gods. *Họ dâng lễ vật hiến tế cho các vị thần.* | | | |
| **ornamental tree** | n | **/ˌɔːnəˈmentl triː/** | cây cảnh |
| ***Ex:***The **ornamental tree** in our front yard is growing rapidly. *Cây cảnh ở sân trước của chúng tôi đang lớn lên nhanh chóng.* | | | |
| **pray** | v | **/preɪ/** | cầu nguyện, lễ bái |
| ***Ex:*** He **prayed** for luck and happiness. *Ông ấy cầu được may mắn và hạnh phúc.* | | | |
| **release** | v | **/rɪˈliːs/** | thả |
| ***Ex:*** He **was released** after questioning by police. *Anh ta được thả sau khi bị cảnh sát thẩm vấn.* | | | |
| **table manners** | n | **/ˈteɪbl mænərz/** | các phép tắc ăn uống |
| ***Ex:*** You should learn about Vietnamese **table manners**. *Bạn nên học phép tắc ăn uống của người Việt.* | | | |
| **worship** | v | **/ˈwɜːʃɪp/** | thờ phục, tôn kính, tôn sùng |
| ***Ex:***  We **worship** Buddha. *Chúng tôi thờ Phật.* | | | |
| **young rice** | n | **/jʌŋ raɪs/** | cốm |
| ***Ex:*** Young rice cake is a **specialty** in this area. *Bánh cốm non là đặc sản ở vùng này.* | | | |

**II. WORD FORM**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Word** | **Related words** | **Transcription** | **Meaning** |
| **acrobatics (n)**  xiếc, các động  tác nhào lộn | acrobatic (adj) | /ˌækrəˈbætɪk/ | thuộc về nhào lộn, xiếc |
| acrobatically (adv) | /ˌækrəˈbætɪkli/ | tài tình, điêu luyện |
| acrobat (n) | /ˈækrəbæt/ | người biểu diễn nhào lộn |
| **accept (v)**  chấp nhận | acceptable (adj) | /əkˈseptəbl/ | có thể chấp nhận được |
| acceptably (adv) | /əkˈseptəbli/ | chấp nhận/ thừa nhận được |
| acceptance (n) | /əkˈseptəns/ | sự chấp thuận, sự thừa nhận |
| acceptability (n) | /əkˌseptəˈbɪləti/ | tính chất có thể chấp nhận |
| **admire (v)**  khâm phục, ngưỡng mộ | admiration (n) | /ˌædməˈreɪʃn/ | sự ngưỡng mộ |
| admirer (n) | /ədˈmaɪərə(r)/ | người hâm mộ |
| **contestant (n)**  thí sinh,  người thi đấu | contest (n) | /ˈkɒntest/ | cuộc thi |
| contest (v) | /kənˈtest/ | thi đấu |
| **decorative (adj)**  có tính trang  trí, để trang trí | decorate (v) | /ˈdekəreɪt/ | trang trí |
| decoration (n) | /ˌdekəˈreɪʃn/ | sự trang trí |
| decorator (n) | /ˈdekəreɪtər/ | người làm nghề trang trí |
| **oblige (v)**  bắt buộc | obligation (n) | /ˌɒblɪˈɡeɪʃn/ | nghĩa vụ, bổn phận |
| obligatory (adj) | /əˈblɪɡətɔːri/ | bắt buộc |
| **social (adj)**thuộc về xã hội | society (n) | /səˈsaɪəti/ | xã hội |
| sociable (adj) | /ˈsəʊʃəbl | dễ gần gũi, chan hoà |
| sociability (n) | /ˌsəʊʃəˈbɪləti/ | tính dễ gần gũi, dễ hoà đồng |
| sociably (adv) | /ˈsəʊʃəbli/ | một cách hoà đồng, thân thiện |

**III. GRAMMAR**

**ARTICLES AND ZERO ARTICLE**

**1. Articles - Mạo từ (a/ an/ the)**

***Định nghĩa:*** Mạo từ là từ đứng trước danh từ và cho biết danh từ ấy đề cập đến một đối tượng xác định hay không xác định.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Mạo từ được chia làm 2 loại** | Mạo từ xác định (definite article) **“the”** |
| Mạo từ không xác định (indefinite article) gồm **“a, an”** |

**a. Mạo từ xác định “the”**

Mạo từ xác định *the* đứng trước danh từ xác định, tức là danh từ đó đã được nhăc đến trong câu hoặc được hai người hiểu ngầm theo ngữ cảnh giao tiếp.

***\* Các trường họp (TH) dùng “the”***

**The**được dùng khi danh từ chỉ đối tượng được cả người nói lẫn người nghe biết rõ đối tượng nào đó: đối tượng đó là ai, cái gì.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **TH**1: Khi vật thể hay nhóm vật thể là duy nhất hoặc được xem là duy nhất. | The Sun *(Mặt trời),* the world *(thế giới),* the Earth *(Trái đất),* The King *(Đức vua),* The Queen *(Nữ hoàng)...* |
| **TH 2:**Trước một danh từ nếu danh từ này vừa được đề cập trước đó. | I see a dog. **The dog**is chasing a cat. **The cat**is chasing a mouse. *(Tôi thấy một chú chó. Chú chó đó đang đuổi theo một con mèo. Con mèo đó đang đuổi theo một con chuột.)* |
| **TH 3:**Trước một danh từ nếu danh từ này được xác định bằng một cụm từ hoặc một mệnh đề. | **The teacher**that I met yesterday is my sister-in-law. *(Cô giáo tôi gặp hôm qua là chị dâu tôi.)* |
| **TH 4:**Đặt trước một danh từ chỉ một đồ vật riêng biệt mà người nói và người nghe đều hiểu. | Please pass **the jar**of honey. *(Làm ơn hãy đưa cho tôi lọ mật ong với.)*  My mom is cooking in **the kitchen.***(Mẹ tôi đang nấu ăn trong nhà bếp.)* |
| **TH 5:**Trước so sánh nhất (đứng trước *first, second, only,...)* khi các từ này được dùng như tính từ hoặc đại từ. | You are **the best**in my life. *(Trong đời anh, em là nhất!)*  He is **the tallest person**in the world. *(Anh ấy là người cao nhất thế giới.)* |
| **TH 6: The +**danh từ số ít: tượng trưng cho một nhóm thú vật hoặc đồ vật. | **The whale**is in danger of becoming extinct. *(Cá voi đang trong nguy cơ tuyệt chủng.)*  **The fast-food**is more and more prevalent around the world. *(Thức ăn nhanh ngày càng phổ biến trên thế giới.)* |
| **TH 7:** Đặt **“the”**trước một tính từ để chỉ một nhóm người nhất định. | The old *(người già),* the poor *(người nghèo),*the rích *(người giàu)* |
| **TH 8: The**được dùng trước những danh từ riêng chỉ biển, sông, quần đảo, dãy núi, tên gọi số nhiều của các nước, sa mạc, miền. | The Pacific *(Thái Bình Dương),* The United States *(Hợp chủng quốc Hoa Kỳ),* the Alps *(Dãy An-pơ)* |
| **TH 9: The + họ (ở dạng số nhiều)**có nghĩa là *gia đình.* | The Smiths *(Gia đình Smith - gồm vợ và các con)*  The Browns *(Gia đình Brown)* |
| **TH 10:**Dùng **“the”**nếu ta nhắc đến một địa điểm nào đó nhung không được sử dụng với đúng chức năng. | They went to **the school**to see their children. *(Họ đến trường để thăm con cái họ.)* |

***\* Các trường hợp (TH) không dùng “the”***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **TH 1:**Trước tên quốc gia số ít, châu lục, tên núi, hồ, đường phố (Ngoại trừ những nước theo chế độ Liên bang - gồm nhiều bang (state). *E.g:* The US, The UK | Europe, Asia, France, Wall Street, Sword Lake, Viet Nam,... |
| **TH 2:**Khi danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ số nhiều dùng theo nghĩa chung chung, không chỉ riêng trường hợp nào. | I like dogs. *(Tôi thích chó.)*Oranges are good for health. *(Cam tốt cho sức khỏe.)* |
| **TH 3:**Trước danh từ trừu tượng, trừ khi danh từ đó chỉ một trường hợp cá biệt. | Men fear death. *(Con người sợ cái chết.)* |
| **TH 4:** Ta không dùng **“the”**sau tính từ sở hữu hoặc sau danh từ ở dạng sở hữu cách. | “My friend”, không phải “my the friend” “The man's wife” không phải “the wife of the man” |
| **TH 5:**Không dùng **“the”**trước tên gọi các bữa ăn hay tước hiệu. | They invited some friends **to dinner.***(Họ đã mời vài người bạn đến ăn tối.)*  Nhưng: **The wedding dinner**was amazing *(Bữa tiệc cưới thật tuyệt vời.)*  Ta nói: President Obama *(Tổng thống Obama),* Chancellor Angela Merkel *(Thủ tướng Angela Merkel..)* |
| **TH 6:**Không dùng **“the”**cho tên môn thể thao, các mùa trong năm hay phương tiện đi lại | Come by car/ by bus *(Đêsn bằng xe ô tô, bằng xe buýt)*  In spring/ in autumn *(vào mùa xuân/ mùa thu),* from beginning to end *(từ đầu tới cuối),*from left to right *(từ trái qua phải)*  To play golf/ chess/ cards *(chơi golf, đánh cờ, đánh hài)*  Go to bed/ hospital/ church/ work *(đi ngủ/ đi viện/ đi nhà thờ/ đi làm)* |

**b. Mạo từ không xác định “a/ an”**

Mạo từ không xác định được đặt trước danh từ không xác định, tức là danh từ đó được nhắc đến lần đầu tiên trong ngữ cảnh.

***\* Các trường hợp dùng mạo từ không xác định***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **TH 1:**Dùng mạo từ bất định trước danh từ số ít đếm được. | We need **a refrigerator.***(Chúng tôi cần một cái tủ lạnh.)*  He drank **a cup**of coffee. *(Anh ấy đã uống một cốc cà phê.)* |
| **TH 2:**Trước một danh từ được nhắc đến lần đầu tiên. | I have **a pen.***(Tôi có một cái bút.)*  She has **a cute dog.***(Cô ấy có một con chó rất xinh.)* |
| **TH 3:**Dùng trong các thành ngữ chỉ lượng nhất định. | A lot, a couple *(một đôi/cặp),* a third *(một phần ba)*  A dozen *(một tá),* a hundred *(một trăm),* a quarter *(một phần tư)* |
| **TH 4:**Dùng trước danh từ chỉ nghề nghiệp. | She is **a nurse**. *(Cô ấy là một y tá.)*  He is **an engineer**. *(Anh ấy là một kỹ sư.)* |

***\* Các trường hợp không dùng mạo từ không xác định "a/ an"***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **TH 1:**Trước danh từ số nhiều.  **A/ An**không có hình thức sổ nhiều. | Ta nói *apples,* không dùng *an apples* |
| **TH 2:**Không dùng trước danh từ không đếm được, danh từ trừu tượng. | What you need is **confidence.***(Cái anh cần là sự tự tin.)* |
| **TH 3:**Không dùng trước tên gọi các bữa ăn trừ khi có tính từ đứng trước các tên gọi đó. | Ta nói: I have **lunch**at 12 o'clock. *(Tôi ăn trưa lúc 12 giờ.)*  Nhưng: He has **a delicious dinner.***(Anh ấy có một bữa tối thật ngon miệng.)* |

***\* Phân biệt cách sử dụng “a” và “an”***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **a** | **an** |
| **- “a”**đứng trước danh fir bắt đầu bằng một **phụ âm**hoặc **một nguyên âm có âm là phụ âm.**  *E.g:* a game *(một trò chơi),* a boat *(một chiếc tàu thủy)*  Nhưng: a university *(một trường đại học),* a year *(một năm)* a one-legged man *(một người đàn ông thọt chân),* a European *(một người châu Âu)* | **- “an”**đứng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm (U E O A I) hoặc một âm câm.  *E.g:* an egg *(một quả trứng),* an ant *(một con kiến)* an hour *(một giờ đồng hồ),* an honest person *(một người thật thà.)*  **- “an”**cũng đứng trước các mẫu tự đặc biệt đọc như một nguyên âm.  *E.g.* an SOS *(một tín hiệu cấp cứu),* an X-ray *(một tia X)* |

**2. Zero articles - Các trưỉrng họp không dùng mạo từ (a/ an/ the).**

|  |
| --- |
| **• Trước danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ trừu tượng.**  *E.g:* What you need is confidence.  *(Cái mà bạn cần là sự tự tin.)*  I like butter.  *(Tôi thích bơ.)* |
| **• Khi danh từ số nhiều đưọc dùng trong câu phát biểu mang nghĩa chung chung.**  *E.g:* Cats don't like cold weather.  *(Loài mèo không thích trời lạnh.)*  Women are fighting for their rights.  *(Phụ nữ đang đấu tranh giành quyền lợi của họ.)*  Post offices close at 5 o'clock.  *(Các bưu điện đóng cửa lúc 5 giờ.)* |
| **• Không dùng mạo từ đối vói các danh từ chỉ bữa ăn.**  *E.g:* Breakfast *(bữa sáng),* lunch *(bữa trưa),* dinner *(bữa tối),* supper *(bữa phụ).*  I have breakfast at 7 every day.  *(Tôi ăn sáng lúc 7 giờ hàng ngày.)*  ***\* Trừ khi có tính từ đứng trước các tên gọi đó hoặc bữa ăn đưọc đề cập tói là một bữa cụ thể xác định***  *E.g:* The dinner we had last night was enormous.  *(Bữa tối mà chúng tôi ăn tối qua rất to.)* |
| **• Trước danh từ chỉ phương tiện vận tải như: *by bus/by train/by plane/by car/on foot/ on horse-hack.***  *E.g:* We travelled all over Europe by bus.  *Chúng tôi đi du lịch khắp châu Âu bằng xe buýt.)*  ***\* Nhưng ta có thể dùng:***  I came here on the local bus.  *(Tôi tới đây bằng xe buýt địa phương.)* |

**IV. PRONUNCIATION**

**Sound /n/ and /ŋ/**

**1. Âm /n/**

**a. Cách phát âm âm /n/**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - /n/ là một phụ âm hữu thanh. Khi phát âm âm này, đặt đầu lưỡi chạm vòm miệng trên và cạnh lưỡi chạm vào sau răng cửa, tiếp xúc răng hàm trên. Đẩy hơi ra đường mũi để phát âm.  - Phát âm giống như khi phát âm chữ “n” trong tiếng Việt. Dây thanh quản sẽ rung khi phát âm | https://lh6.googleusercontent.com/iwMPE2w93WX1Te3baldMV9CTUEz1nFg9L7Ic9ahzpeYQX3FKI8yL4u7_EjrxB3eotW-cL89V3OkTzmXgyb5WRsiEKOFaNOuk-N2J9GqbUgoQhQUnDcCjpJP-hpQzPKzYcuFegQ5q8J5Jx2oyJzgDsw=s800 |

**• *Tập phát âm với các ví dụ sau:***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| night | /naɪt/ | ban đêm |
| peanut | /ˈpiːnʌt/ | lạc, đậu phụng |
| nine | /naɪn/ | chín |
| fan | /fæn/ | cái quạt |
| nap | /næp/ | giấc ngủ ngắn |
| bunny | /ˈbʌni/ | con thỏ |

**b. Dấu hiệu nhận biết âm /n/**

**Dấu hiệu 1:**Những từ có chứa “n” được phát âm là /n/.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **n**ice | /naɪs/ | đẹp |
| k**n**ow | /nəʊ/ | biết |
| fu**nn**y | /ˈfʌni/ | (câu chuyện) buồn cười |
| Su**n** | /sʌn/ | Mặt trời |
| te**n**th | /tenθ/ | Số thứ 10 |
| a**n**them | /ˈænθəm/ | bài thánh ca |
| a**n**t | /ænt/ | con kiến |
| behi**n**d | /bɪˈhaɪnd/ | đằng sau |
| pe**n**sive | /ˈpensɪv/ | trầm ngâm, sâu sắc |
| te**n**se | /tens/ | thời của động từ |
| he**n** | /hen/ | gà mái |
| cha**n**ge | /tʃeɪndʒ/ | thay đổi |
| hi**n**ge | /hɪndʒ/ | bản lề, khớp nối |
| pi**n**ch | /pɪntʃ/ | cái kẹp |
| e**n**d | /end/ | kết thúc |
| sou**n**d | /saʊnd/ | âm thanh |

**Dấu hiệu 2:**Từ có chứa chữ “kn” phát âm là /n/ khi nó đứng đầu từ, khi đó “k” là âm câm nên sẽ không được phát âm.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| know | /nəʊ/ | biết |
| knot | /nɒt/ | nút thắt |
| knife | /naɪt/ | con dao |

***Chú ý:****khi chữ “n” đứng sau “m” và ở cuối từ thì “n” sẽ thành âm câm.*

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| column | /ˈkɒləm/ | cột |
| autumn | /ˈɔːtəm/ | mùa thu |
| solemn | /ˈsɒləm/ | trang nghiêm |

**2. Âm**/**ŋ**/

**a. Cách phát âm âm /ŋ/**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - /ŋ/ trong tiếng Anh cũng là một âm hữu thanh nên khi phát âm, dây thanh quản sẽ rung. Khi phát âm âm này, cuống lưỡi nâng lên, chạm vào ngạc mềm. Đẩy hơi ra đường mũi để phát âm.  - Đầu lưỡi hướng xuống, về phía trước và có thể nằm sau răng cửa hàm dưới. Phát âm giống như khi phát âm chữ “ng” trong tiếng Việt. | https://lh3.googleusercontent.com/w-BBHDgLlcw6eC21szyjQeBcS7Qdp4VAaPmW3AAV6FN-QQuZIuM-pNwYxv7NqFQxs___-mZhXOSHXnzEeqqASsHlxqGOopvWHrT9cmWpEKUrcjNMvIk_S15ahyl9S1POiYwT-C6YR9BRbg6KT2clSg=s800 |

**• *Tập phát âm với các ví dụ sau:***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| brings | /brɪŋz/ | mang đến |
| uncle | /ˈʌŋkl/ | chú |
| monkey | /ˈmʌŋki/ | con khỉ |
| painting | /ˈpeɪntɪŋ/ | bức tranh |
| meaningful | /ˈmiːnɪŋfl/ | có nghĩa |
| singer | /ˈsɪŋər/ | ca sỹ |
| thing | /θɪŋ/ | thứ, cái, điều, việc, món |
| something | /ˈsʌmθɪŋ/ | cái gì đó |

**b. Dấu hiệu nhận biết âm /ŋ/**

**Dấu hiệu:**“n” được phát âm là /ŋ/ khi nó đứng trước âm /k/ và /g/.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| u**n**cle | /ˈʌŋkl/ | bác, chú |
| dri**n**k | /drɪŋk/ | Uống |
| si**n**gle | /ˈsɪŋɡl/ | đơn độc, một mình |
| a**n**gle | /ˈæŋɡl/ | góc, xó |
| anger | /ˈæŋɡər/ | sự tức giận |
| ink | /ɪŋk/ | mực |
| trunk | /trʌŋk/ | hòm, rương |

***Ngoại lệ:*** Trong một số trường hợp “n” vẫn phát âm là /n/ vì “g” ghép với nguyên âm phía sau để tạo nên một âm khác và được phát âm là /dʒ/.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| strange | /streɪndʒ/ | lạ lùng |
| challenge | /ˈtʃælɪndʒ/ | thử thách |
| stranger | /ˈstreɪndʒər/ | người lạ |
| danger | /ˈdeɪndʒər/ | nguy hiểm |

**V. PRACTICE**

**Exercise 1. Look at the bold word, use single underline with the word containing sound /n/ and double underline with the word containing sound /ŋ/.**

1. The national **anthem**is played before every sports game.

2. I saw an **ant**crawling on the kitchen counter.

3. The **Sun**was shining brightly, and the sky was clear.

4. I'm really thirsty, can I get a **drink**of water?

5. I can't find my phone, have you seen it? It’s a black **thing.**

6. There's **something**strange about that person, I can't put my finger on it.

7. He sat by the window, looking out and lost in **pensive**thought.

8. Can you **bring**the dessert to the party tonight?

9. My **uncle**is coming to visit us next week.

10. Don't leave anything **behind**when you leave the hotel room.

**Exercise 2. Read the sentences in Exercise 1 aloud and pay attention to the sound /n/ and /ŋ/.**

**Exercise 3. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases from the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **represent** | **possessed** | **relationships** | **ceremony** | **decorative** |
| **festival-goers** | **family reunion** | **lantern** | **applause** | **hurricane** |

1. Her acrobatics were greeted with loud \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

2. The \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ opened         with a fanfare of trumpets.

3. It was believed that people could be \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ by bad spirits.

4. Many coastal towns were damaged by the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

5. A green bamboo pole is used to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the deity.

6. She carried a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to light her way.

7. Thousands of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ come here every year.

8. Family bonding is important for building strong \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

9. We have a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ every New Year's Day.

10. She drew a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ border around the picture.

**Exercise 4. Look at the photos and put the correct words/ phrases under them.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **receiving lucky money** | **going to the pagoda** |
| **buying a blossom branch** | **visiting the relatives** |
| **making Chung cakes** | **giving gifts to parents** |

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Tiếng Anh 9 Tập 1 Sách bài tập - TEST YOURSELF 2 - 4 Put an appropriate  word in each gap in the following passage. (2 p) - | Sách Mềm | Vở bài tập Tiếng Anh 8 tập 1 - Unit 4 OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS - B.  VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR - 1 Choose the right word/phrase and then write it  under each picture. | Sách Mềm | Giving Gifts To Parents PNG Transparent Images Free Download | Vector Files  | Pngtree |
| 1. | 2. | 3. |
| Did you give your child lucky money?Why is the taste of the year getting  lighter? - iNEWS | 740+ Family Visiting Grandparents Illustrations, Royalty-Free Vector  Graphics & Clip Art - iStock | Buddhist Man Stock Illustration - Download Image Now - Adult, Adults Only,  Buddha - iStock |
| 4. | 5. | 6. |

**Exercise 5. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

1. I'm so \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ about my trip. It's going to be amazing. (excite)

2.*Ao dai* is our \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ dress. We wear it every Monday at school. (tradition)

3. In Viet Nam, we usually wait for the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ person to sit down before we sit down. (old)

4. After \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ food from the plate, you should put it into your bowl before eating. (take)

5. What is the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ between a custom and a tradition? (similar)

6. You should use both hands when giving and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ things. (receive)

7. In my family, the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that has been passed down is eating together every Sunday. (traditional)

8. When being \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to a Vietnamese home, you should bring gifts wrapped in brightly colored paper. (invite)

[**Exercise 6. Fill in the blanks with the correct form or tense of the verbs in the box.**](https://docs.google.com/document/d/1rYV6IgzoX4uOPlSA2joXJYB2ILh2h3QH/mobilebasic#id.3qjz2p1)

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **reflect** | **pass** | **break** | **worship** |
| **wrap** | **respect** | **reunite** | **take** |

1. She \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the         present in red paper and tied it with a yellow ribbon.

2. All students should \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ their teachers.

3. The culture of *Xoe* dancing \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Thai         people's lifestyle and culture.

4. We decided \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with         tradition and go away for Tet holidays.

5. In my family, the tradition that has been \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ down is eating together every Sunday.

6. Almost every Vietnamese household sets an altar \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ their ancestors.

7. It is considered very impolite not \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ off your shoes before entering a house in Japan.

8. Lots of people come back \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with their families during Tet holiday.

**Exercise 7. Fill in the blank with *a/an/the* or zero article (x).**

1. I bought \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ blue sweater yesterday.

2. I 'd like \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ cup of tea.

3. There is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ apple and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ banana on the table

4. I bought \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ beef, vegetables and milk. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ beef is very good.

5. Mai has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ many books. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ books are mostly about English grammar.

6. I took \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ suitcase and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ backpack on holiday. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ suitcase was much more useful.

7. Julie read \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ book and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ magazine. She said \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ books was quite boring though.

8. She offered us \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ piece of cake and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ biscuits.

9. They drank \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ coffee and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ tea.

10. James has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ son and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ two daughters.

**Exercise 8. Fill in the blank with *a/ an/ the* or zero article (x).**

1. Lan often watches \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ films and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ TV programmes all night.

2. She has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ black umbrella and I have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ blue one. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ blue one is bigger.

3. I bought \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ new dress, but I was annoyed to find that \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ zip was broken.

4. We should take \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ taxi because it’s getting dark.

5. I met \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ very nice American last night.

6. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Sun rises in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ east and sets in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ west.

7. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Moon moves around \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Earth.

8. We often play soccer in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ afternoon.

9. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ guitar is one of the most popular musical instruments.

10. I often go to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ school at 6.30 a.m.

**Exercise 9. Fill in the blank with *a/ an/ the* or zero article (x).**

1. Pop music always appealed more to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ young then \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ old.

2. I often listen to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ music in my free time.

3. Donald Trump becomes the 45th \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ president of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ United States on January 20, 2017.

4. We often take \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ exam each semester.

5. There will be \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ interesting movie this weekend.

6. Hoa is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ most intelligent student in my class.

7. When I was at \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ school, I had to wear \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ uniform.

8. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ poor and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ elderly are often left behind when it comes to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ modern technology.

9. Is there \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ bank near here?

10. On \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Christmas Eve, people often have parties late at \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ midnight.

**Exercise 10. Fill in the blank with *a/an/the* or zero article (x).**

1. I am studying in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ university in Ho Chi Minh City.

2. Miss Lin speaks \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Chinese.

3. I borrowed \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ pen from your pile of pencils and pens.

4. Eli likes to play \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ football.

5. I bought \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ umbrella to go out in the rain.

6. I lived on \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Main Street when I first came to town.

7. Albany is the capital of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ New York State.

8. My husband’s family speaks \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Polish.

9. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ apple a day keeps your enemy away.

10. Our neighbors have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ cat and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ dog.

**Exercise 11. Fill in the blank with *a/an/the* or zero article (x).**

1. Your soup is so good. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ meat is pretty tender.

2. Are you interested in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Science or \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Music?

3. They got married but \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ marriage wasn’t very successful.

4. Do you know any of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ people who live across \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ road?

5. After \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ work, the boss usually invites his staff to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ pub.

6. When mom was ill, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ lot of her friends came to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ hospital to visit her.

7. Many people hate \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ violence, but they like to watch it in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ movies.

8. Have you ever visited \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Madame Tussauds in London?

9. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ life would be difficult without \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ useful machines and gadgets we have today.

10. I’m on \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ night duty this week.

11. I know someone who wrote \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ book about \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ American presidents.

12. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ World War II ended in 1945.

13. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ fumes of cars and factories are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ primary reasons for \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ air pollution.

14. He was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ unsuccessful musician when he came to this town.

15. Don't stay in that hotel. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ beds there are very uncomfortable.

16. The car sped away at \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ hundred km \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ hour.

17. John doesn't usually go to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ church on \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Sundays.

18. He was sent to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ prison for \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ murder.

19. At \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ beginning of his speech, he spoke about \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ tourism in general.

20. We usually go by \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ train, but today we're taking \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ bus.

**Exercise 12. Choose the correct option to complete the sentence.**

1. I would live to live by \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ sea

A. the                         B. a                         C. an                         D. x

2. Harry is a sailor. He spends most of his life at \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ sea.

A. a                         B. an                         C. the                         D. x

3. There are billions of stars in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ space.

A. a                         B. an                         C. x                         D. the

4. He tried to park his car but \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ space wasn't big enough.

A. the                         B. a                         C. an                         D. x

5. We often watch \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ television

A. the                         B. a                         C. an                         D. x

6. Can you turn off \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ television, please?

A. the                         B. a                        C. an                         D. x

7. We had \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ dinner in a restaurant.

A. a                         B. an                         C. x                         D. the

8. We had \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ meal in a restaurant.

A. a                         B. an                        C. the                        D. x

9. Thank you. That was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ very nice lunch.

A. a                        B. an                        C. the                        D. x

10. Where can \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ people buy everything they need?

A. the                        B. a                        C. an                        D. x

11. Her parents are now working in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Europe.

A. the                        B. a                        C. an                        D. x

12. He majors in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ English.

A. a                        B. an                        C. the                        D. x

13. Mark Twain, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ American writer, wrote *“Life on the Mississippi River”.*

A. an                        B. a                        C. the                        D. x

14. Paris is splendid by \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ night.

A. a                        B. an                        C. the                        D. x

15. We might be able to catch \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ last train if we hurried.

A. a                        B. an                        C. the                        D. x

16. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ used razor blade is useless thing.

A. The – the                 B. A-a                        C. An – an                D. x – x

17. We live at \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ third house from the church.

A. the                        B. a                        C. an                        D. x

18. My aunt has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ interesting novel.

A. the                        B. a                        C. an                        D. x

19. It was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ best film I had ever read.

A. the                        B. an                        C. a                        D. x

20. A video lab is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ useful means for language learning.

A. the                         B. an                        C. a                        D. x

**Exercise 13. Read the following passage then answer the questions.**

Gong culture in the Central Highlands of Viet Nam has been recognized by UNESCO as a Masterpiece of the Intangible Heritage of Humanity. Gong culture covers five provinces of the Central Highlands: Kon Turn, Gia Lai, Dak Lak, Dak Nong and Lam Dong. The masters of gong culture are the ethnic groups of Bahnar, Sedang, Mnong, Coho... The Gong Festival is held annually in the Central Highlands. In the festival, artists from these provinces give gong performances, highlighting the gong culture of their own province. For the ethnic groups of the Central Highlands, gongs are musical instruments of special power. It is believed that every gong is the symbol of a god who grows more powerful as the gong gets older. Therefore, gongs are associated with special occasions in people's lives, such as the building of new houses, funerals, crop praying ceremonies... The gong sound is a way to communicate with the gods.

1. Where does Gong culture exist?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. How often is the Gong Festival held?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. What do artists do in the Gong Festival?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. Is the gong sound a way to communicate with the ancestors?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 14. Read the passage carefully and choose the correct answers.**

**GIFT-GIVING CUSTOMS IN VIET NAM**

Gift-giving is important in Viet Nam because of the significance of interpersonal relationships in Vietnamese culture.

First and foremost, do not encourage corruption. There is a clear cut between gift-giving and bribery. Nevertheless, it is common in Viet Nam for exchanging small gifts on certain occasions such as anniversaries, Tet holidays... to express respect, love, appreciation, or gratitude.

Gift-giving customs depend on the context. If it is a private gift for one Vietnamese partner you should give the gift at a private occasion. If you have a gift for the whole office or company, you should give it after the business meeting with the whole office employee.

Do not wrap a gift in black paper because this color is unlucky and associated with funerals in Viet Nam. Gifts that symbolize cutting such as scissors, knives, and other sharp objects should be avoided because they mean the cutting of the relationship.

Vietnamese may or may not open these gifts when they are received; leave the option to them. You will also receive gifts and should defer to your host as to whether you should open them when receiving or not. Regardless of when it is opened or what it is, profuse thanks are always appropriate.

1. According to the passage, why is gift-giving important in Viet Nam?

A. Because it helps to establish a friendship.

B. Because it's common in Vietnamese culture.

C. Because it's the best way to build up a stable relationship.

D. Because personal relationships play a vital role in Vietnamese culture.

2. Which of the followings should not be a reason for gift-giving?

A. To show appreciation                         B. To bribe somebody

C. To express gratitude                         D. To show affection

3. When giving a gift, you should \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. wrap it in black or white paper

B. give it in the business meeting

C. never give sharp objects, such as knives or scissors

D. avoid giving it on a private occasion

4. When receiving a gift, you should \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. always say "thank you"                         B. try to find what is it

C. open it in front of the giver                 D. ask your host to open it

5. Which of the following is NOT true about gift-giving customs in Viet Nam?

A. Gift-giving is a good way of strengthening relationships.

B. Gifts for your partners should be given at private occasions.

C. You should avoid giving anything sharp.

D. It is considered rude not to open the gift in front of the giver.

**Exercise 15. Read the passage and answer the question below.**

Wedding custom in Viet Nam is quite complicated. Before an official wedding, a ceremony of engagement must be held first. In Vietnamese tradition, an engagement ceremony is an official occasion for families of fiancé and fiancee to mark their relationship and to arrange the wedding.

Each family needs to prepare a representative who is a family member having a happy life and a high-ranking position in the family. On the day of the engagement, the representatives of the two families will have some announcements about the wedding and exchange gifts. The time of the wedding is chosen suitably based on the lunar calendar. Gifts which are put in trays are prepared by the family of fiance a few days before the engagement ceremony. The number of trays must be an odd number. In Vietnamese habits, odd numbers are thought to bring luck to the couple. In the trays, there are betel leaves, areca nut fruits, wine, tea, husbandwife, and sticky rice. On the wedding day, the couple has to stay apart to avoid unlucky things. The wedding ceremony starts in front of the ancestor altar. The master of the wedding ceremony will declare the couple becomes a new family.

1. What ceremony occurs before the official wedding?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. Who is selected to be the representative of each family?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. Who prepares gift trays for the engagement ceremony?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. Why must the number of trays be an odd number?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. Where does the wedding ceremony occur?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 16. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their meanings.**

1. gifts/ and have a/ meet/ to exchange/ traditional meal./ Most families/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. with/ Homes/ and kumquat./ are decorated/ the apricot blossom,/ peach blossom,/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. during Tet./ are encouraged/ Children/ or cry/ not to fight/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. the house./ plant/ a new year's tree/ Many families/ in front of/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. to worship/ After/ attend/ the local pagoda/ ancestors./ the family meal,/ many Vietnamese people/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. festival./ exciting/ music/ The Glastonbury Festival/ is an/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. that/ the first person/ is a generous/ and kind-hearted./ to enter/ their house/ Vietnamese people/ hope

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. colorful flowers./ the festival/ people/ Before/ with/ prepare/ their houses/ to decorate/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. on the/15th day/ The Vu Lan Festival/ seventh/ of the/ lunar month./ takes place/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. to/ seeing/I am/ festival/ in Dak Lak./ looking forward/ the elephant race/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

11. first day/ of Tet./ shouldn' t/ You/ on the/ sweep/ the house/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

12. about/ other/ cultures./I am/ interested/ in learning/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 17. Write in full sentences using the given words.**

1. We/ wish/ our mom/ health/ longevity!/

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. He/ released/ after being/ questioned/ by/ police/ yesterday.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. He/ prays/ luck/ happiness./

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. The man/ monk/ from/ Emei Mountain./

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. They/ make/ sacrificial offerings/ the gods./

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. The ornamental tree/ in our front yard/ growing/ rapidly./

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. Martial arts/ originates/ the East.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. Young rice cake/ a specialty/ this area.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. You should/ learn/ Vietnamese table manners./

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. We/ have/ a family/ reunion/ next week./

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **UNIT 6. LIFESTYLES**  **I. VOCABULARY** | | | | |
| **Word** | **Type** | | **Pronunciation** | **Meaning** |
| **dogsled** | n | | **/ˈdɒɡsled/** | xe trượt tuyết chó kéo |
| **Ex:** His dogs help him race in a **dogsled**. *Những con chó của anh ấy giúp anh ấy kẻo xe trượt tuyết.* | | | | |
| **experience** | n, v | | **/ɪkˈspɪəriəns/** | kinh nghiệm, trải nghiệm |
| **Ex:** My lack of practical **experience** was a disadvantage. *Sự thiếu kinh nghiệm thực tế của tôi là một bất lợi.* | | | | |
| **/ɡriːt/** | v | | **/bæd ˈspɪrɪt/** | chào, chào hỏi |
| **Ex:** The winning team **was greeted** by cheering crowds. *Đội chiến thắng được chào đón bởi đám đông cổ vũ.* | | | | |
| **greeting** | n | | **/ˈɡriːtɪŋ/** | lời chào |
| **Ex:** He offered me a warm **greeting** and invited me in. *Anh ay đón tôi bằng một lời chào nồng nhiệt và mời tôi vào.* | | | | |
| **habit** | n | | **/ˈhæbɪt/** | thói quen |
| **Ex:** I'm trying to break the **habit** of staying up too late. *Tôi đang cố gắng bỏ thói quen thức quá khuya.* | | | | |
| **hurry** | n, v | | **/ˈhʌri/** | sự vội vàng, đi vội vàng, thúc giục |
| **Ex:** She is in a **hurry**. *Cô ấy đang vội.* | | | | |
| **igloo** | n | | **/ˈɪɡluː/** | lều tuyết |
| **Ex:** They live in an **igloo**. *Họ sống trong một chiếc lều tuyết.* | | | | |
| **impact** | n | | **/ˈɪmpækt/** | sự ảnh hưởng |
| **Ex:** Her speech made a profound **impact** on everyone. *Bài phát biểu của cô đã tạo ra một****sự tác động****sâu sắc đến mọi người.* | | | | |
| **independent** | adj | | **/ˌɪndɪˈpendənt** | độc lập |
| **Ex:** The country was declared independent in 1945. *Đất nước được tuyên bố độc lập vào năm 1945.* | | | | |
| **interact** | v | | **/ˌɪntərˈækt/** | tương tác |
| **Ex:** Teachers **interact** with each child every day.*Giáo viên tương tác với từng đứa trẻ mỗi ngày.* | | | | |
| **interaction** | n | | **/ˌɪntərˈækʃn/** | sự tương tác |
| **Ex:** **The interaction** of the two groups produced many good ideas. *Sự tương tác của hai nhóm đã tạo ra nhiều ý tưởng hay.* | | | | |
| **lifestyle** | n | | **/ˈlaɪfstaɪl/** | lối sống |
| **Ex:**Many people are trying to adopt a healthy **lifestyle** these days. *Ngày nay, nhiều người đang cố gắng áp dụng một lối sống lành mạnh.* | | | | |
| **make crafts** | v | | **/meɪk krɑːft/** | làm đồ thủ công |
| ***Ex:*** She likes **making crafts**. *Cô ấy thích làm đồ thủ công.* | | | | |
| **maintain** | v | | **/meɪnˈteɪn/** | duy trì, gìn giữ |
| ***Ex:*** Two countries **have maintained** close relations since 1945. *Hai nước duy trì mối quan hệ thân thiết từ năm 1945.* | | | | |
| **musher** | n | | **/ˈmʌʃər/** | người điều khiển xe trượt tuyết chó kéo |
| **Ex:** The **musher** led his team of sled dogs to home. *Người thợ dẫn đoàn chó kéo xe của mình về nhà.* | | | | |
| **nomadic** | adj | | **/nəʊˈmædɪk/** | du mục |
| **Ex:** **Nomadic** life is not easy. *Cuộc sống du mục không hề dễ dàng.* | | | | |
| **offline** | adj, adv | | **/ˌɒfˈlaɪn/** | trực tiếp |
| **Ex:** For **offline** orders, call this number. *Đối với các đơn đặt hàng trực tiếp, hãy gọi số này.* | | | | |
| **online** | adj, adv | | **/ˌɒnˈlaɪn/** | trực tuyến |
| ***Ex:*** He spends hours playing **online** games. *Anh ấy dành hàng giờ để chơi trò chơi trực tuyến.* | | | | |
| **online learning** | n | | **/ˌɔːnəˈmentl triː/** | việc học trực tuyến |
| *Ex:***Online learning** helps us save much time. *Học trực tuyến giúp chúng ta tiết kiệm rất nhiều thời gian.* | | | | |
| **revive** | | v | **/rɪˈvaɪv/** | làm sống lại, hồi sinh |
| ***Ex:*** The flowers soon **revived** in water. *Những bông hoa sớm hồi sinh trong nước.* | | | | |
| **serve** | | v | **/sɜːrv/** | phục vụ |
| ***Ex:***They **served** a wonderful meal to us. *Họ phục vụ một bữa ăn tuyệt vời cho chúng tôi.* | | | | |
| **staple** | | adj | **/ˈsteɪbl/** | cơ bản, chủ yếu |
| ***Ex:*** Rice is the **staple** diet in many Asian countries. *Cơm là thực phẩm chính ở nhiều nước châu Á.* | | | | |
| **street food** | | n | **/striːt fuːd/** | thức ăn đường phố |
| ***Ex:***  We enjoyed many delicious **street foods** in Thailand. *Chúng tôi đã thưởng thức nhiều món ăn đường phố ngon ở Thái Lan.* | | | | |
| **tribal** | adj | | **/ˈtraɪbl/** | thuộc bộ tộc, thành bộ lạc |
| ***Ex:*** They work together with the **tribal** groups in this area. *Họ làm việc cùng với các nhóm bộ lạc trong khu vực này.* | | | | |

**II. WORD FORM**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Word** | **Related words** | **Transcription** | **Meaning** |
| **experience (n, v)** kinh nghiệm,  trải nghiệm | experienced (adj) | /ɪkˈspɪəriənst/ | từng trải, có kinh nghiệm |
| experiential (adj) | /ɪkˌspɪriˈenʃl/ | theo kinh nghiệm |
| **independent (adj)**  độc lập | independent(n) | /ˌɪndɪˈpendənt/ | người độc lập |
| independence (n) | /ˌɪndɪˈpendəns/ | nền độc lập |
| depend (v) | /dɪˈpend/ | phụ thuộc |
| dependent (adj) | /dɪˈpendənt/ | phụ thuộc, lệ thuộc |
| dependent (n) | /dɪˈpendənt/ | người phụ thuộc |
| dependence (n) | /dɪˈpendəns/ | sự phụ thuộc |
| **maintain (v)**  duy trì, gìn giữ | maintenance (n) | /ˈmeɪntənəns/ | sự duy trì, bảo dưỡng |
| **interact(v)**  tương tác | interaction (n) | /ˌɪntərˈækʃn/ | sự tương tác |
| interactive (adj) | /ˌɪntərˈæktɪv/ | có tính tương tác |
| interactively (adv) | /ˌɪntərˈæktɪvlɪ/ | tương tác |
| **nomadic (adj)**  du mục | nomad (n) | /ˈnəʊmæd/ | người dân du mục |
| **revive (v)**  làm sống lại,  hồi sinh | revival (n) | /rɪˈvaɪvl/ | sự trở lại, hồi sinh |
| revivalism (n) | /rɪˈvaɪvəlɪzəm/ | quá trình thức tỉnh |
| revivalist (n) | /rɪˈvaɪvəlɪst/ | người đánh thức lòng tin |

**III. GRAMMAR**

**1. Future simple tense ( Thì tương lai đon)**

**a. Cách sử dụng**

***- Diễn tả hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai, không phụ thuộc vào điều kiện nào.***

***E.g:***         We will go to the beach tomorrow.

*(Chúng ta sẽ đi đến bãi biển vào ngày mai.)*

I will write a book someday.

*(Một ngày nào đó, tôi sẽ viết một cuốn sách.)*

***- Diễn tả dự đoán về tương lai dựa trên thông tin hiện có.***

***E.g:***         The weather looks like it will be nice tomorrow.

*(Thời tiết dường như sẽ đẹp vào ngày mai.)*

I think I will get a job offer soon.

*(Tôi nghĩ tôi sẽ sớm nhận được một lời đề nghị việc làm.)*

***- Diễn tả quyết tâm hoặc lời hứa.***

***E.g:***         I will help you with your homework.

*(Tôi sẽ giúp bạn làm bài tập về nhà.)*

He will never forget her.

*(Anh ta sẽ không bao giờ quên cô ấy.)*

**b. Cấu trúc**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Khẳng định** | **S + will + V(infinitive)** |
| **Phủ định** | **S + will + not + V(infinitive)** |
| **Nghi vấn** | **Will + S + not + V(infinitive)?** |

***E.g:***         I will go to the park tomorrow. *(Tôi sẽ đi đến công viên vào ngày mai.)*

She will not attend the party tonight. *(Cô ấy sẽ không tham dự bừa tiệc tối nay.)*

Will you come to the meeting tomorrow? *(Bạn sẽ đến cuộc họp vào ngày mai chứ?)*

**c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Trong câu xuất hiện các trạng từ chỉ thời gian như:** | • in + thời gian trong tương lai (in 2 minutes: *trong 2phút nữa)*  • tomorrow: *ngày mai*  • next day / week/ next month/ next year: *ngày tiếp theo/ tuần tới/ tháng tới/ năm tới* |
| **Động từ chỉ khả năng sẽ xảy ra như:** | • think/ believe/ suppose/...: *nghĩ/ tin/ cho là*  • perhaps/ probably: *có lẽ*  • promise: *hứa* |

**2. First conditional sentence (Câu điều kiện loại 1)**

**a. Cách sử dụng**

***- Câu điều kiện loại 1 được dùng để diễn tả một giả định có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.***

***E.g:***         If I get up early, I will go to school on time.

*(Nếu tôi dậy sớm, tôi sẽ đi học đúng giờ.)*

**- Dùng để đề nghị hay gợi ý.**

***E.g:***         If you need a glass of water, I can get you one.

*(Nếu anh cần một cốc nước, tôi có thể lấy giúp anh.)*

***- Dùng để cảnh báo hay hàm ý đe dọa:***

***E.g:***         If you don't work hard, you won't pass the exam.

*(Nếu con không học hành chăm chỉ, con sẽ trượt kỳ thì.)*

**b. Cấu trúc**

|  |
| --- |
| **If + S + V(s/es), S + will/ can/ may... + V** |

**c. Lưu ý**

***\* Trường hợp nói về sự thật hiển nhiên hoặc việc luôn đúng, ta dùng thì hiện tại đơn ở cả 2 vế của câu điều kiện.***

|  |
| --- |
| If + S + V (s/es), S + V(s/es)  If + S + V (s/es), V |

***E.g:***         If we heat the chocolate, it smelts.

*(Nếu chúng ta đun nóng sô cô la, nó sẽ tan chảy.)*

Don't touch anything if you don't want to get out of here.

*(Đừng chạm vào bất cứ thứ gì nếu cậu không muốn ra khỏi đây.)*

***\* Câu điều kiện loại 1 phủ định (Unless = If...not)***

Trong câu điều kiện phủ định, ta có thể dùng **Unless**thay cho **If... not.**

***E.g:***         If you don't pass the driving test, you cannot have a driving license.

= Unless you pass the driving test, you cannot have a driving license.

*(Nếu bạn không vượt qua kỳ thi sát hạch lái xe, bạn sẽ không có bằng lái.)*

***Chú ý:****đã dùng****Unless****thì trong câu không còn “not” nữa.*

***\* Đảo ngữ câu điều kiện loại 1***

Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện loại 1 sẽ giúp câu mang sắc thái lịch sự hơn và thường dùng trong trường hợp đưa ra lời yêu cầu, nhờ vả.

**Cấu trúc:**

|  |
| --- |
| **Should + S + (not) + be +..., + S + will/may/can + V**  **Should + S + (not) + V +..., + S + will/may/can + V** |

***E.g:***         If you are regularly late for school, you will be punished.

= Should you be regularly late for school, you will be punished.

= If you go to school late regularly, you will be punished.

= Should you go to school late regularly, you will be punished.

*(Nếu bạn thường xuyên đi học muộn, bạn sẽ bị phạt.)*

**IV. PRONUNCIATION**

**Clusters: /br/ and /pr/**

**1. /br/=/b/ +/r/**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **/b/:** mím nhẹ hai môi lại và nâng phần ngạc mềm để chặn luồng hơi trong khoang miệng, rồi mở miệng bật hơi từ phía trong ra. Khi phát âm, dây thanh sẽ rung lên. | | | | | | https://lh4.googleusercontent.com/FJRT-1oZvgRymHl_UVHEwhCZHFKRQaA8EMYZV6QOHR1CdE-ojTB2wUTd_j8FugsT4UmYRdUF25ZV9cUrb1tHgV0CPWvSzag7hSwQBDrmDYN8FU71lyk2RqMO0sPYjIdDLHsCMtI7XJ40BsfXhu_2CA=s800 | |
| **/r/:** co lưỡi về phía sau, cong đầu lưỡi lên để tạo nên một khoảng trống ở giữa miệng nhưng lưỡi không chạm tới chân răng trên. Khi phát âm, luồng hơi sẽ đi qua khoang miệng và đẩu lưỡi ra ngoài. | | | | | | https://lh5.googleusercontent.com/iO2e7YYNo982LuHiZcBE5a4PZMLEcFXue6TKCtBhRv57HS-kIBUZATmVv7nURpq5uoSvVyBslM3yCT2RXUvVFwPfZkjwFlL8rUILjlJch8UMTfzeNJRMDQwasKueF1YEjaXGgrjjUsXX99bnWe4CNQ=s800 | |
| **Ex:** | bride | brilliant | library | bracelet | brother | | breakfast |

**2. /pr/=/p/ +/r/**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **/p/:** mím nhẹ hai môi lại và nâng phần ngạc mềm để chặn luồng hơi trong khoang miệng, rồi mở miệng bật hơi từ phía trong ra. Khi phát âm, dây thanh không rung. | | | | | | https://lh6.googleusercontent.com/VBgQH81Pamyf0x4FBTc2Z1FSlkiTQnzq3MQ6T12Y5OAqieRagOB2OxMhkZfLAQnuLv4E7OnhgQAUdd3a3R3vkxMHTcI4stNfHCHyDVRYWq3MrqiBtFMlobPIPoIkDIbNmdUKYAdRCXhL1MeKOmJBMA=s800 | |
| **/r/:** co lưỡi về phía sau, cong đẩu lưỡi lên để tạo nên một khoảng trống ở giữa miệng nhưng lưỡi không chạm tới chân răng trên. Khi phát âm, luồng hơi sẽ đi qua khoang miệng và đầu lưỡi ra ngoài. | | | | | | https://lh3.googleusercontent.com/4St8S7F_dgUB-CIoCGYgtB_MdduPGdBFqRq81J-K_DhZAqe6u1JJ-yT1ihL_XZ7YMTvn9re3mzDzcBCyslUaG56ZnGtVJIZQ8tJKC0gUOT6cYBdw3frjBqW0WJms1tix2pkZxPF3qHzzsJWmkBhHlA=s800 | |
| **Ex:** | prize | problem | apricot | pretty | princess | | present |

**3. Sự khác nhau giữa /br/ và /pr/**

★ Khi phát âm cụm phụ âm /br/ gây rung ở họng còn /pr/ thì không tạo độ rung.

***Tập phát âm các từ sau:***

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| break | pray | practice | bring | brown |
| pretty | prize | brave | print | brush |
| apricot | brother | prawn | breath | president |
| pride | bracelet | broccoli | April | brilliant |

**V. PRACTICE**

**Exercise 1. Look and put the word under the correct photo.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **bread** | **pray** | **apricot** | **brother** |
| **prawn** | **bracelet** | **broccoli** | **president** |
| Bracelet Cartoon Images - Free Download on Freepik | Cute cartoon shrimp stock vector. Illustration of gourmet - 45856119 | Broccoli Vegetable Cartoon Royalty-free Clip Art, PNG, 600x443px, Broccoli,  Cartoon, Drawing, Flower, Flowering Plant Download | Kids Praying Stock Vector | Adobe Stock |
| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. |
| Cartoon Fruit Apricot Illustration PNG Transparent Background And Clipart  Image For Free Download - Lovepik | 401140790 | Wheat Long Loaf Stock Illustration - Download Image Now - Loaf of Bread,  Bread, Cartoon - iStock | Our Cartoon President: Showtime orders more episodes of Stephen Colbert  series | EW.com | Premium Vector | The little boy is playing on the brothers back of  illustration |
| 5. | 6. | 7. | 8. |

**Exercise 2. Use single underline with the word containing /br/ and double underline with the word containing /pr/. Then read the sentences aloud (pay attention to the sound /br/ and /pr/).**

1. Gold and silver are precious metals.

2. The bank has many branches all over the country.

3. He never talks about his private life with anybody at work.

4. How many brothers and sisters do you have?

5. The new television series was an expensive project.

6. I spend two hours every day browsing the Web.

7. She'll teach US how to play English pronunciation games.

8. I have some bread and a glass of milk for breakfast.

**Exercise 3. Fill in the blank with the adjectives in the box.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **downtown** | **populous** | **polluted** | **historic** | **charming** |
| **annoying** | **affordable** | **delicious** | **livable** | **cosmopolitan** |

1. They make sure that the rooms in that resort in Phu Quoc island are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, even the big ones.

2. Singapore is the first on the list of most \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ cities in Southeast Asia.

3. San Francisco is one of the most \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ cities in the United States with the city centre and several suburbs around.

4. Built in the 1680s, the four-kilometer Freedom Trail is the oldest structure in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Boston.

5. Formerly known as Bombay, Mumbai is one of the most \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ cities in the world with a population of over 14 million.

6. Many people say Charleston is one of the most beautiful and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ places in the United States with a very rich history.

7. Ha Noi is not \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ as         other cities because it has many lakes, and parks.

8.*Bun cha* in Ha Noi is so \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that         the former US President Obama tried two helpings when he came there.

9. That man could not get a work permit to teach English, and this was rather \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for him.

10. In my opinion, Ha Noi with a history of over one thousand years is more \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than any other city in Viet Nam.

**Exercise 4. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.**

1. I had a great \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ skydiving for the first time last weekend. (experiential)

2. After finishing college, I moved to a new city and learned to be more \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, managing my own budget and making my own decisions. (depend)

3. It’s important to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a         healthy lifestyle by exercising regularly and eating a balanced diet. (maintenance)

4. Some cultures have a tradition of leading a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle, moving from place to place to find food and water sources. (nomad)

5. The government is planning to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the old historical sites in the city to attract more tourists and preserve the local heritage. (revival)

6. I am going to visit Da Nang, so can you tell me what the greatest \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in Da Nang are? (attract)

7. Don’t worry about your travelling because the public transport here is convenient and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. (rely)

8. Sydney is a metropolitan and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ city so you have a great variety of things and foods from different countries. (multiculture)

9. My aunt lives in one of the most \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ parts in Paris. She is a well-known fashion designer there. (fashion)

10. The outdoor food markets in Singapore are fun and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ so when you go there you should try some food there. (afford)

**Exercise 5. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. Ha Noi, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the Old Quarter, become a perfect city for walking with handicraft shops, street food, etc. (especial)

2. Ha Long Bay, which means descending dragon, is the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ heritage of the world with 1,6000 limestone islands. (nature)

3. Below Sa Pa are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ rice         terraces in the endless valley. (picture)

4. Besides the beach, the main \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in         Da Nang is the Museum of Cham Sculpture with the world's largest collection of Cham artifacts. (attract)

5. Hue becomes one of the most \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ destinations for travelers to Viet Nam with the number of three million tourists a year. (popularity)

6. Hoi An used to be one of the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ports         in Southeast Asia, which was used by the Japanese, Portuguese, Dutch, French and Chinese merchants. (busy)

7. Nha Trang, a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ coastal         city in Central Viet Nam, is generally recognized as Viet Nam's main beach destination. (delight)

8. Formerly known as Saigon, Ho Chi Minh City is a metropolis which is still young but very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. (dynamist)

9. The Mekong Delta is well-known for its busy waterways with many rivers, canals and streams through \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the region. (flow)

10. Phu Quoc Island is the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ place         for riding, snorkeling, scuba diving, and relaxing. (idea)

**Exercise 6. Choose the correct option to complete the sentence.**

1. This beach looks amazing! I think we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ this place!

A. are loving                        B. are going to love                C. will love

2. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you to the airport tomorrow if you need someone to give you a lift.

A. take                         B. am taking                         C. will take

3. My plane \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at Manchester airport at 8 p.m tomorrow evening.

A. lands                         B. will land                        C. Landed

4. We have some ideas for what we want to do while we are here in Scotland. If the weather is nice, we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a mountain on one of the days.

A. climb                         B. are climbing                 C. are going to climb

5. What shall I do today? I think I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the beach while the Sun is out!

A. go                                B. am going                        C. will go

6. I'm sorry but I cannot come to the meal tonight. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ work at 8 p.m. tonight, so I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ arrive at the restaurant on time!

A. finish - will                        B. will finish – will                 C. finishes – will

7. If you tell me your secret, I promise I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ anyone!

A. am not telling                 B. won't tell                        C. am telling

8. I think the Earth \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot warmer in 50 years.

A. is becoming                        B. will become                        C. becomes

9. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ my friend in Sicily sometime this year, but I’m not sure when.

A. am visiting                        B. am going to visit                 C. will visit

10. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a valedictorian next year.

A. am going to try                 B. will try                        C. will going to try

**Exercise 7. Choose the correct answer.**

1. I haven't got my phone.’ -'That's OK. **I’ll lend/I am going to lend**you mine.

2. It's Julia's birthday next week, so **we 11 buy/we're going to buy**her some flowers.

3 .Will you lend me £ 10? I promise **I' 11 give/I am going to give**it back to you tomorrow.

**4. We ll have/We're going to have**a barbecue tomorrow. It's all planned, so I hope it won't rain.

5. 'Jim's starting university tomorrow.' - 'What **will he/is he going to**study?'

**6. You won t like/you are not going to like**that film. It's very frightening. Let's choose another one.

7. Do you think **they'll like/they are going to like**the presents we got for them?

8. Look! The coach **will leave/is going to leave!**Run or we'11 miss it.

**Exercise 8. Complete the sentences using will or be going to in its correct form**

1. Philipp \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 15 next Wednesday. (be)

2. They \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a         new computer. (get)

3. I think my mother \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ this CD. (like)

4. Paul's sister \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a baby. (have)

5. They \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at         about 4 in the afternoon. (arrive)

6. Just a moment. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you with the bags. (help)

7. In the future, people \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ more hybrid cars. (buy)

8. Marvin \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a party next week. (throw)

9. We \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to         Venice in June. (fly)

10. Look at the clouds! It \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ soon. (rain)

**Exercise 9. Complete the sentence using the structure: “if + Present Simple, S + will/won’t”.**

1. If \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (the weather/be) beautiful tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (we/drive) to the beach.

2. If \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (she/send) the letter now, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (they/receive) it tomorrow.

3. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (Fred/be) angry if (Jack/arrive) late again.

4. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (I/come) to your house if \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (I/have) enough time.

5. If \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (she/not/pass) this exam, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (she/not/get) the job that she wants.

6. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (you/learn) a lot if \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (you/take) this course.

7. If \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (I/get) a ticket, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (I/go) to the cinema.

8. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (I/buy) that machine if \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (it/not/cost) too much.

9. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (you/ arrive) on time if \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (you/ catch) the taxi.

10. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (I/go) to the doctor's if \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (I/not/feel) better tomorrow.

11. If \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (they/win) this match, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (they/be) the champions.

12. If \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (it/rain), we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not/go) fishing.

**Exercise 10. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form of conditional sentence type 1.**

1. If we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (send)         an invitation, our friends \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (come) to our party.

2. He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not/ understand) you if you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (whisper).

3. They \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not/ survive) in the desert if they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not/ take) extra water with them.

4. If you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (press)         CTRL + S, you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (save) the file.

5. You \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (cross)         the Channel if you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (fly) from Paris to London.

6. Fred \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (answer)         the phone if his wife \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (have) a bath.

7. If Claire \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (wear)         this dress at the party, our guests \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not/ stay) any longer.

8. If I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (touch)         this snake, my girlfriend \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not/ scream).

9. She         \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (forget) to pick you up if you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not/ phone) her.

10. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (remember) you if you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (give) me a photo.

**Exercise 11a. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form of conditional sentence type 1.**

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (study) hard, I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (improve) my English.

2. Theresa \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Japan if she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (get) a cheap flight.

3. If her boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not call) today, she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (leave) him.

4. If the phone \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (ring), \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (you/answer) it?

5. What \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (you/do)         if you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not find) your wallet?

6. He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (find)         a part time job if he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (keep) looking.

7. If you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (feel) unwell tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (take) a rest.

8. If they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (not         tell) us, we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (keep) asking.

9. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (you/let) me go if I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (promise) to come back early?

10. He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (eat) some popcorn if he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (feel) hungry.

**Exercise 11b. Put the. verbs in brackets in the correct form of conditional sentence type 1.**

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (study), I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (pass) the exams.

2. If the Sun \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (shine), we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to the town.

3. If he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (have) a temperature, he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (see) the doctor.

4. If my friends \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (come), I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (be) very happy.

5. If she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (earn) a lot of money, she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (fly) to New York.

6. If we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (travel) to London, we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (visit) the museums.

7. If you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (wear) sandals in the mountains, you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (slip) on the rocks.

8. If Rita \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (forget) her homework, the teacher \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (give) her a low mark.

9. If they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the disco, they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to loud music.

10. If you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (wait) a minute, I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (ask) my parents.

**Exercise 12a. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed to make the sentence correct:**

1. If (A) someone came (B) into the store, smile (C) and say, “May (D) I help you?”

2. If (A) you do not understand (B) what were written (C) in the book, you could ask (D) Mr. Pike.

3. If (A) there isn't (B) enough food (C), we couldn't continue (D) our journey.

4. If (A) anyone will phone (B), tell (C) them I'll be (D) back at 11:00.

5. I will come (A) to meet Mr. Pike and tell him about(B) your problems if (C) you didn't solve (D) them.

**Exercise 12b. Begin the sentences below with "unless". Make any necessary changes.**

1. If they don't practise a lot, they will lose the game.

🡪 Unless

2. I'll miss the train if I don't go now.

🡪 Unless

3. If she doesn't answer the phone, leave her a message.

🡪 Unless

4. If you don't pay the bill, I'll call the police.

🡪 Unless

5. If he doesn' t work hard, he won' t pass the examination.

🡪 Unless

**Exercise 13. Rewrite these sentences by using conditional sentence type 1.**

1. Turn off all the lights and you will not pay more money.

🡪 If

2. Unless she wears warm clothes, she will have a cold.

🡪 If

3. Be careful or you may have an accident.

🡪 If

4. Phone your parents or you have a trouble.

🡪 If

5. Unless she whispers, everyone knows what she is saying.

🡪 If

6. Stay here and you will feel safe.

🡪 If

7. Pay the electricity bill today or your electricity will be cut off.

🡪 If

8. Stop smoking otherwise your cough may be worse.

🡪 If

9. Unless we use less fossil fuel, they will be run out soon.

🡪 If

10. Unless it stops raining today, we may be faced with a serious flood.

🡪 If

11. Do morning exercises regularly, your body will be fitter.

🡪 If

12. Unless we use renewable energy, we will have nothing for the future generation.

🡪 If

13. The climate will change unless we reduce the use of non-renewable energy.

🡪 If

14. Lock all the doors and no one can break into your house.

🡪 If

15. If we continue hunting polar bears, they will become extinct in the near future.

🡪 If

**Exercise 14. Read the text carefully, then choose the correct answers.**

Life in the big city is face-paced, fun and exciting. There are countless job opportunities and activities to occupy your time. However, with the good, there also comes the bad. Although the big city has more job opportunities; there are also more people competing for a single job. This can make your job search frustrating. Oddly enough, you will see hundreds, if not thousands of jobs available each week, but you still might remain unemployed, especially when the economy is down. In addition, the cost of living is typically higher in big cities, and it can **cost you an arm and a leg**for a small apartment in a decent area of the city, not to mention other costs to fulfill your basic demands. Diversity is a good thing, but the number of people can be a bit overwhelming if you are not accustomed to it. There will always be crowds and always be people around. Moreover, traffic can be a nightmare in the big city. It can get so bad that it can turn you into an evil person. If you hate driving in traffic, then the big city life is not for you. Heavy traffic also contributes to pollution, which is one of the biggest disadvantages of living in the city. Obviously, our health is affected most by certain diseases relating to the respiratory system and other body parts. A lot of premature deaths are supposed to be the result of long-term exposure to small particles. Most importantly, there is always more crime in a big city, causing you second case your decision for living in a big city. You arc much more likely to be a victim of a crime living in a big city than in a small town.

1. According to the passage, some good things of living in the city are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. excellent educational system and recreational activities

B. excellent educational system and countless job opportunities

C. countless job opportunities and activities to occupy your time

D. a lot of kinds of entertainment and shopping centers

2. While big cities have more job opportunities, it also gives \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. more competition for a single job

B. higher salary

C. growing economic crisis

D. greater chances of being unemployed

3. What does the phrase **“cost an arm and a leg”**mean?

A. your legs and arms have good value

B. cost a small amount of money

C. you must work hard to earn money

D. cost a lot of money

4. According to the paragraph, city is not a perfect place for \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. extroverted people                         B. introverted people

C. people who hate driving in traffic                 D. people who prefer a busy life

5. In the big city, people tend to when traffic is getting heavy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. go crazy                                         B. get enough time to relax

C. wait a bit longer                                D. slow down themselves

6. Which of the following sentences is NOT true?

A. Pollution causes health problems.

B. Cities are always crowded.

C. It costs a lot of money to live in a big city.

D. Crime is not a serious problem in big cities.

**Exercise 15. Read the text then answer the questions.**

Toronto is one of the world's most multicultural cities. Almost half of its population are immigrants. You'll hear more than 140 languages and dialects spoken on the streets in this “City of Neighborhoods”. It's the most populous city in Canada (more than 5 million in the Greater Toronto Area) and the province of Ontario's economic engine. Toronto's motto is “Diversity Our Strength”. Toronto prides itself on its wide range of cultures, languages, food and arts.

Visit Toronto, and one of the first things you'll notice is that the city's appeal lies in its citizens' friendliness: ask for directions, and you'll be helped. Along with its highly artistic culture and fascinating museums that proudly display the country's history, it's clear that a Toronto trip has something for everyone.

Although Toronto's climate is partially moderated by its Great Lakes location, it is more extreme than Bordeaux's and Christchurch's, with somewhat hotter summers and considerably colder winters. Summertime in Toronto is festival time. Just about every weekend, and some weekdays, you'll find one happening. If crowds aren't your thing, avoid the Caribana festival (July 28 through July 31), when the city greets more than one million visitors.

1. Where is Toronto?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. What is the population of the Greater Toronto Area?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. What makes Toronto proud of itself?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. What is one of the first things in Toronto that appeal to tourists?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. Which of Toronto proudly displays the country’s history?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. How is the climate in Toronto?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. When is the festival time in Toronto?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. How many visitors does the city greet at the Caribana festival?

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 16. Rewrite the sentence without changing its meaning. Use *unless****.*

1. If you don’t do this now, you will regret it.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. I will feel bored if my best friend doesn't come to the party with me.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. We won’t talk to her if she doesn't apologize.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. The baby will cry louder if they don't give him some toys.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. If she doesn't promise to come back home early, her father won’t let her go.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. If we don't buy a good map, we will be lost.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. If Mary doesn’t have enough money, she won’t buy that ear

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. You can't have many job opportunities if you don't have an IELTS degree.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. If you don't eat less, you can't lose weight.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. If he doesn't speak English well, he can't take part in this English contest.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 17. Write in complete sentences using the given words.**

1. If / we / not /go shopping / soon / we / be / late.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

2. If Sarah / not be / ready / by 8 a.m /I / go / without her.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

3. If / you / send / your mother / this letter / it / come / to / her / tomorrow.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

4. She / get / the / job / if / she / do / well / in / interview.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

5. They / not miss / the flight / if they / be / in a hurry.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

6. He / learn / quickly / if / he / practice / frequently.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

7. If / it / rain / they / postpone / the match.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

8. You / not be able to sleep / if / you watch / this horror movie.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

9. I / go / shopping / with / my mother / if /I / have / time.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

10. If / you / be / hungry / eat / something.

\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

**ĐÁP ÁN**

**UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES**

**Exercise 1a.**

1. He put salt into the sugar bowl by mistake.

2. She injured her foot while playing soccer.

3. He can prove his innocence with the evidence.

4. We can remove the stain from the carpet using a cleaner.

5. I could swim when I was a child, but now I've lost my confidence in the water.

6. You should eat your vegetables to stay healthy.

7. The sky can turn blue during a clear day.

8. They can't eat spicy food because of allergies.

9. She can wiggle her loose tooth with her tongue.

10. He can't eat citrus fruit because of a medical condition.

**Exercise 1b. (student's answer)**

**Exercise 2.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **/u:/** | | /ʊ/ | |
| do | move | wolf | woman |
| lose | prove | book | good |
| blue | flute | look | wool |
| brutal | lunar | cook | foot |
| food | too | wood | took |
| pool | tool | could | should |
| group | troupe |  |  |
| douche | wounded |  |  |

**Exercise 3.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. balance | 2. activity | 3. paper | 4. socialize | 5. drawing | 1. balance |
| 6. keep | 7. together | 8. free time | 9. spend | 10. in shape | 6. keep |

**Exercise 4**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. texting | 2. reading books |
| 3. playing games | 4. playing sports |
| 5. playing chess | 6. watching TV |
| 7. hanging out with friends | 8. making crafts |

**Exercise 5.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **do** | **watch** | **play** | **surf** | **read** | **make** |
| DIY, crafts | TV, movies | computer games, sports, badminton | the Internet, waves | books, magazines, novels | crafts,  cakes, origami |

**Exercise 6.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **1. Going to an event/ place** | going to the gym, visiting museums, going to a fashion show |
| **2. Having hobbies** | collecting books, making crafts, gardening |
| **3. Learning something** | a skill, a language, a musical instrument |
| **4. Playing sports** | aerobics, skating, volleyball judo |
| **5. Reading** | a book, a poem, the newspaper |
| **6. Socializing with friends** | hanging out, chatting, texting |
| **7. Spending time with family** | visiting relatives, having meals together, doing DIY projects |
| **8. Watching TV** | a comedy, the news, a drama, a game show |

**Exercise 7.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1.surfing | 2. relying | 3. hanging out | 4. reading |
| 5. writing | 6. detests | 4. socializing | 8. adores |

**Exercise 8.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. addicted | 2. socializing | 3. obesity | 4. excited |
| 5. relaxing | 6. considerably | 7. dissatisfied | 8. communication |

**Exercise 9.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1. cooking/ to cook | 6. visiting | 11. listening |
| 2. waiting | 7. telling/ to tell | 12. watching |
| 3. meeting - to see | 8. playing/ to play | 13. making, drawing |
| 4. to learn - visiting | 9. to surf/ surfing - surfing | 14. hanging out |
| 5. to go | 10. drinking | 15. eating |

**Exercise 10.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. B | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. A | 6. C | 7.B | 8. C | 19. A | 10. D |
| 11. A | 12. B | 13. C | 14. B | 15. C | 16. C | 17. B | 18. C | 19. D | 20. B |

**Exercise 11.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. B (is) | 2. D (to stay) | 3. C (too much) | 4. D (relaxing) |
| 5. B (sounds) | 6. C (in front of) | 7. C (from) | 8. B (careful) |

**Exercise 12.**

1. The people who jog regularly have healthier hearts.

2. Jogging helps to bum fat stored in your body, especially belly fat.

3. Jogging is ideal for increasing the bones' weight.

4. Because it helps to strengthen the immune system in the body.

5. We should jog every day to improve our health.

**Exercise 13.**

**A.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. T | 2. F | 3. F | 4. T | 5. T | 6. F |

**B.**

1. Watching television is the most popular free time activity in the UK.

2. The British watch TV about 25 hours a week.

3. In winter, the British often do DIY (do-it-yourself) in their spare time.

4. They are football, cricket, horse racing, motor racing and motorcycle racing.

**Exercise 14.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. D | 2. A | 3.E | 4. C |
| 5. B | 6. G | 7.F | 8. H |

**Exercise 15a.**

1. My friends and I are really keen on play computer games. 🡪 **playing**

2. I really like to getting involved in team sports. It is good for building up co-operative skills. 🡪 **get**

3. Mai especially loving to spend her free time sleeping and being lazy in my room. 🡪**loves.**

4. She enjoys go shopping on weekends and hang out with friends. 🡪 **going / hanging**

5. I am very interested in study English. 🡪**studying**

**Exercise 15b.**

1. When you play games online, be careful when you make friends with strangers.

2. We can see that Kim likes playing the piano.

3. Some hobbies are interesting such as making crafts or collecting things.

4. Sitting all day in front of the computer can cause health problems.

5. Do you fancy working with children?

**Exercise 16a.**

1. I prefer to read in bed.

2. I love watching cartoons on TV.

3. Does Trung hate doing morning exercises?

4. They love to sunbathe and (to) swim.

5. Does she prefer watching TV during her meals?

6. We love skateboarding in the park after school.

**Exercise 16b.**

1. I like learning English.

2. Lan's favorite leisure activity is using the computer.

3. I fancy going camping with my close friends.

4. Mr. Pike is fond of water polo.

5. I don’t mind picking her up to the cinema.

**UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE**

**Exercise 1.**

1. We saw a herd of **zebras**grazing in the savannah during our safari.

2. We went **fishing**at the lake and caught a big **fish.**

3. She cooked a delicious roasted **chicken**for dinner.

4. The photographer captured a stunning **picture / picture**of the sunset over the ocean

5. She has **six**siblings, making her part of a large family.

6. He couldn't help but **grin**when he saw his favorite dessert on the table.

7. He enjoys outdoor **activities / activities**such as hiking, biking, and camping.

8. She likes to **collect**vintage stamps as a hobby.

9. The doctor prescribed some pain relief **pills**for her backache.

10. I would like to **suggest**a new restaurant for our next dinner outing.

**Exercise 2. (student's answer)**

**Exercise 3.**

**Ride:**a camel, a bike, a motorbike, a donkey, a car, an ostrich

**Collect:**food, water, data, information, dolls, postcards

**Pick:**grapes, blackberry, strawberry, tea buds

**Herd:**buffaloes, cattle, goats, sheep

**Put up:**a flag, a fence, a memorial, a notice, a tent

**Exercise 4.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. slow | 2. colorful | 3. friendly | 4. hard | 5. brave |
| 6. boring | 7. inconvenient | 8. vast | 9. peaceful | 10. nomadic |

**Exercise 5.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. peaceful | 2. nomadic | 3. collector | 4. inconvenient | 5. unsafe |
| 6. friendly | 7. healthily | 8. traditional | 9. generously | 10.soundly |

**Exercise 6.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. harvest time | 2. rice |
| 3. buffalo-drawn carts | 4. herding |
| 5. countryside | 6. buffalo |
| 7. busiest time | 8. colorful |
| 9. fantastic | 10. noisier |

**Exercise 7.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Comparative form** | **Comparative form** |
| 1. more badly | 11. later |
| 2. more conveniently | 12. more smartly |
| 3. earlier | 13. more responsibly |
| 4. farther/ further | 14. more patiently |
| 5. faster | 15. more generously |
| 6. more fluently | 16. more cleverly |
| 7. more happily | 17. more quickly |
| 8. harder | 18. more suitably |
| 9. more slowly | 19. more beautifully |
| 10. better | 20. more strongly |

**Exercise 8.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. earlier than | 2. more slowly than |
| 3. later | 4. more loudly than |
| 5. harder than | 6. faster than |
| 7. farther than | 8. better than |
| 9. worse than | 10. more thoroughly than |

**Exercise 9.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. bigger | 2. more comfortable |
| 3. more slowly | 4. better |
| 5. farther/ further | 6. worse |
| 7. busier | 8. harder |
| 9. quieter | 10. more happily |

**Exercise 10.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. more comfortably 🡪 comfortable | 6. more fastly 🡪 faster |
| 2. more pretty 🡪 prettier | 7. more better 🡪 better |
| 3. more hardy 🡪 harder | 8. confident 🡪 confidently |
| 4. more healthily 🡪 healthier | 9. difficultly 🡪 difficult |
| 5. more better 🡪 better | 10. more well 🡪 better |

**Exercise 11.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1. more fluently | 2. more happily | 3. earlier |
| 4. later | 5. more gracefully | 6. more loudly |
| 7. better | 8. more slowly | 9. higher |
| 10. farther | 11. more carefully | 12. more often |
| 13. faster | 14. worse | 15. harder |

**Exercise 12.**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1. more important | 2. worse | 3. more clearly |
| 4. well | 5. better | 6. easier |
| 7. more simply | 8. later | 9. narrower |
| 10. earlier | 11. more fluently | 12. more intelligent |
| 13. more boring | 14. faster | 15. happy |

**Exercise 13.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. C | 4. A |
| 5. B | 6. C | 7. D | 8. D |

**Exercise 14.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. A | 4. D | **5. C** |

**Exercise 15.**

1. They went there by bus.

2. He grows wheat, vegetables and potatoes.

3. It can plough and break soil, distribute manure and plant potatoes.

4. It can cut and thresh corn at the same time.

5. The cattle such as horses, sheep and cows are raised on Uncle Brown's farm.

**Exercise 16a.**

1. Hung's brother drives less carefully than he does./ Hung's brother doesn't drive as carefully as he does.

2. Some years ago the laboratory in my school was worse equipped than now.

3. Quang works harder so he often gets better marks than Nam.

4. Minh drives more carelessly than Trung so he often has had an accident.

5. Going by bus is slower than going by taxi but it costs less than a taxi.

**Exercise 16b.**

1. Last summer I went to the beach less often than this summer.

2. That cake is less freshly made than this cake.

3. Jim's younger brother behaves less politely than Jim.

4. In the past teenagers acted less violently than these days.

5. My mother is less patient than your mother.

**Exercise 17.**

1. Mr. Brown is poorer than Mr. Smith.

2. My parent's house is larger than my house.

3. The red dress is cheaper than the black dress.

4. Yesterday it was warmer than today.

5. I don’t think I am shorter than you.

6. Is John better at Math than Jim?

7. Jim's classmates look much older than him.

8. My hair is shorter than your hair.

9. I speak more slowly than my sister.

10. Tony drives less carefully than Mary.

**UNIT 3: TEENAGERS**

**Exercise 1.**

1. We took a guided tour of the historical landmarks in the city.

2. Her voice was so soothing that it put me to sleep.

3. I enjoy reading books in my free time.

4. I am sure that I left my keys on the kitchen counter.

5. The tracker identified the spoor of the wild animal in the forest.

6. The tourist took pictures of the famous monument as a keepsake.

7. He won the chess tournament after many intense matches.

8. Can you please point out the direction to the nearest grocery store?

**Exercise 2. (student's answer)**

**Exercise 3.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. Bullying | 2. concentrate | 3. connect | 4. enjoyable | 5. disappoint |
| 6. mature | 7. influence | 8. notification | 9. pressure | 10. struggle |

**Exercise 4.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. Adolescents | 2. house-keeping | 3. cognitive skills | 4. independence |
| 5. resolve | 6. frustrations | 7. self-disciplined | 8. columnist |

**Exercise 5.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. frustrated | 2. worried | 3. tense | 4. confident |
| 5. delighted | 6. depressed | 7. calm | 8. relaxed |

**Exercise 6.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. E | 2. A | 3. C | 4. F | 5. B | 6. G | 7. D |

**Exercise 7.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. B | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. A | 6. C | 7. C | 8. B |

**Exercise 8.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. or | 2. so | 3. because | 4. although |
| 5. and | 6. but | 7. because | 8. although |

**Exercise 9.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. d | 2. a | 3. c | 4. b | 5. g | 6. e | 7. h | 8. f |

**Exercise 10.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. but | 2. so | 3. Although | 4. because | 5. so |
| 6. or | 7. so | 8. because | 9. although | 10. or |

**Exercise 11.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. however | 2. otherwise | 3. therefore | 4. however | 5. otherwise |
| 6. therefore | 7. otherwise | 8. however | 9. therefore | 10. therefore |

**Exercise 12.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. but | 2. and | 3. so | 4. because | 5. but |
| 6. but | 7. therefore | 8. otherwise | 9. otherwise | 10. so |
| 11. however | 12. or | 13. so | 14. therefore | 15. and |

**Exercise 13.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. challenging | 2. Teenagers | 3. pressure | 4. important |
| 5. academic | 6. exams | 7. strong | 8. guidance |

**Exercise 14.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. D | 4. D | 5. C |

**Exercise 15.**

**A.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. T | 2. F | 3. T | 4. F | 5. T |

**B.**

1. Peer pressure, bullying on campus and harassment can distract teens from studying.

2. Arguments with siblings, disagreements with parents over rules and expectations and the need to consistently care for younger siblings put teens under pressure.

3. It can mean the end of a relationship, friendship or cherished extracurricular activity.

4. Teens can doubt their self-worth after a broken relationship because of their change in social status.

**Exercise 16.**

1. We know him and his friends.

2. The coat was soft and warm.

3. It is stupid and quite unnecessary to do that.

4. I wanted to go but he wanted to stay.

5. Your arguments are strong but they don't convince me.

6. You can go there by bus or by train.

7. I was feeling tired so I went to bed when I got home.

8. I took a book with me on my holiday, yet I didn't read a single page.

9. I want to go to the beach, for the weather is nice.

10. I don't like spicy food, so I always ask for mild salsa.

11. He's allergic to dairy, so he can't eat ice cream.

12. He wants to buy a car, but he can't afford it right now.

**Exercise 17.**

1. I'm tired, so I'm going to bed early tonight.

2. She loves to read, but she doesn't have much time for it.

3. I want to learn English, therefore, I'm taking an English class.

4. The weather is nice, so we re going to have a picnic in the park.

5. She studied hard, therefore, she passed the exam.

6. I need to get some work done, but I keep getting distracted.

7. Would you like a cake or an ice cream?

8. She is a great cook but she doesn't like to bake.

9. He went to the bakery and bought some bread.

10. He loves to travel; however, he doesn't like flying.

11. I have a headache, therefore, I'm going to take some medicine.

12. She's not feeling well, so she's going to the doctor.

**UNIT 4: ETHNIC CROUPS OF VIET NAM**

**Exercise 1.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. column | 2. accountant        3 | . antique | 4. knee |

**Exercise 2.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. girl | 2. glass | 3. bags | 4. frogs |

**Exercise 3.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. communal | 2. traditional |
| 3. groups | 4. heritage |
| 5. festival | 6. ethnic |
| 7. overlook | 8. open-air market |
| 9.turkeys | 10. fields |

**Exercise 4.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. stilt houses | 2. specialty |
| 3. diverse | 4. unique |
| 5. folk dances | 6. costume |
| 7. heritage site | 8. ornaments |
| 9. terraced fields | 10. Ethnic monirities |

**Exercise 5.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. traditions | 2. population | 3. traditional | 4. colorful |
| 5. specialties | 6. minorities | 7. performance | 8. population |

**Exercise 6.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. cultural heritage | 2. information | 3. ethnic groups | 4. research |
| 5. a tour | 6. display area | 7. stilt house | 8. little bridges |

**Exercise 7.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. C | 2. U | 3. U | 4. U | 5. C |
| 6. C | 7. U | 8. U | 9. U | 10. C |

**Exercise 8.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. Are, am | 2. Do, don't | 3. Is, is | 4. Is, isn't |
| 5. Is, is | 6. Are, aren't | 7. Does, doesn't | 8. Do, do |
| 9. Are, are | 10. Is, isn't | 11. Is, is | 12. Are, aren't |

**Exercise 9.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. they do | 2. they don't | 3. there are | 4. she isn't | 5. she does |
| 6. it isn't | 7. there is | 8. they don't | 9. he is | 10. he doesn't |

**Exercise 10.**

1. How long did you stay in New Zealand?

2. Why did she call the firemen?

3. How many kilos of oranges did you buy?

4. Who did John write about?

5. What did you do last night?

6. What did she make for her mother?

7. Who did Susan give the money to?

8. How did we go to school?

9. Why were you tired yesterday morning?

10. How many people did Mary invite to the party?

**Exercise 11.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. C | 6. | B | 16. A |
| 2. C | 7. | A | 17. B |
| 3. C | 8. | D | 18. D |
| 4. C | 9. | C | 19. C |
| 5. D | 10. | D | 20. B |

**Exercise 12.**

1. Where do your family usually go on the first day of Tet?

2. How long does Tet last?

3. What should people do before Tet?

4. Why shouldn't people eat duck meat at Tet?

5. When will you visit your relatives?

6. How old is Mount Everest?

7. Where is the Grand Canyon?

8. What is the highest mountain in the world?

9. How can visitors get to Angel Falls?

10. How often does he play volleyball?

11. How long have you lived in New York?

12. What has the weather been like in Stockholm?

13. How did he travel to Mexico?

14. How often do you play basketball?

14. What did you do last night?

**Exercise 13.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. A | 4. D | 5. C | 6. C | 7. B | 8. D |

**Exercise 14.**

1. They live in Hoa Binh and Thanh Hoa.

2. It belongs to the Mon - Khmer group.

3. They cultivate mainly wet rice, make handicrafts and exploit forest products.

4. Because they look out on their vast rice fields.

5. They believe that non - living objects have spirits.

6. It is the “Going to the Fields Ceremony”.

**Exercise 15.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. D | 4. A | 5. C |

**Exercise 16a.**

1. Some groups like the Tay, Hmong, and Dao live mostly in mountainous regions in the north.

2. “Ethnic minority peoples” speak their own languages and have their own life customs and traditions.

3. Our country 's government always takes care of people's lives, especially the ethnic groups'.

4. The Muong in Hoa Binh and Thanh Hoa are well-known for their rich folk literature and traditional songs.

5. Many ethnic minority children in remote or mountainous areas are studying at boarding schools.

**Exercise 16b.**

1. Which soup do you like? - I like chicken soup.

2. Where does Ann usually go in the evening? - She usually goes to the cinema.

3. Who do Carol and Bill visit on Sundays? - They visit their grandparents.

4. What does David usually drink for breakfast? - He usually drinks coffee.

5. When do you watch TV? - I watch TV in the evening.

6. Why does Rachel stay in bed? - She stays in bed because she is sick.

7. How do you go to the office? - I go to the office by bicycle.

8. Whose laptop does your sister carry? - She carries mine.

**Exercise 17.**

1. Who swam in the lake?

2. What fell of the table?

3. What did they see at the zoo?

4. What time did he leave the party?

5. Where did John go last Sunday?

6. What did he give her for her birthday?

7. Where did the company send the new worker to?

8. What did your sister dream about last night?

9. When did your grandmother hear a loud scream?

10. Where did you/we go?

11. Why did he fall?

12. Why was the teacher angry?

13. How long did it take you to get to school?

14. When did she last ride a bike?

15. How much cheese did you buy?

**UNIT 5: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS**

[**Exercise 1.**](https://docs.google.com/document/d/1rYV6IgzoX4uOPlSA2joXJYB2ILh2h3QH/mobilebasic#id.2773tq8)

1. The national anthem is played before every sports game.

2. I saw an ant crawling on the kitchen counter.

3. The Sun was shining brightly, and the sky was clear.

4. I'm really thirsty, can I get a drink of water?

5. I can’t find my phone, have you seen it? It's a black thing.

6. There's something strange about that person, I can't put my finger on it.

7. He sat by the window, looking out and lost in pensive thought.

8. Can you bring the dessert to the party tonight?

9. My uncle is coming to visit US next week.

10. Don't leave anything behind when you leave the hotel room.

[**Exercise 2. (student's answer)**](https://docs.google.com/document/d/1rYV6IgzoX4uOPlSA2joXJYB2ILh2h3QH/mobilebasic#id.354h5v5)

**Exercise 3. Complete the sentences with the words or phrases from the box.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. applause | 2. ceremony |
| 3. possessed | 4. hurricane |
| 5.represent | 6. lantern |
| 7. festival-goers | 8. relationships |
| 9. family reunion | 10. decorative |

**Exercise 4.**

1. making Chung cakes

2. buying a peach blossom branch

3. giving gifts to parents

4. receiving lucky money

5. visiting the relatives

6. going to the pagoda

**Exercise 5.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. excited | 2. traditional | 3. oldest | 4. taking |
| 5. similarity | 6. receiving | 7. tradition | 8. invited |

**Exercise 6.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. wrapped | 2. respect | 3. reflects | 4. to break |
| 5. passed | 6. to worship | 7. to take | 8. to reunite |

**Exercise 7.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| l. a | 2. a | 3. an-a | 4. x-The | 5. x-The |
| 6. a- a-The | 7. a-a-the | 8. a-x | 9. x-x | 10. a-x |

**Exercise 8.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. x, x | 2. a, a, The | 3. a, the | 4. a | 5. a |
| 6. The, the, the | 7. The, the | 8. the | 9. The | 10. x |

**Exercise 9.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. the, the | 2. x | 3. x, the | 4. an | 5. an |
| 6. the | 7. x, x | 8. The, the, x | 9. a | 10. x, x |

**Exercise 10.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. a | 2. x | 3. a | 4. x | 5. an |
| 6. x | 7. x | 8. x | 9. An | 10. a, a |

**Exercise 11.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| l. The | 5. x, the | 9. x/the | 13. The/the/x | 17. x/x |
| 2. x/x | 6. a/the | 10. x | 14. an | 18. x/x |
| 3. the | 7. x/x | 11. a, x | 15. The | 19. the/x |
| 4. the /the | 8. x | 12. The | 16. a, an | 20. X/a |

**Exercise 12.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. A | 2. D | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D | 6. A | 7.C | 8. A | 9. A | 10. D |
| 11. D | 12. D | 13. A | 14. D | 15. C | 16. B | 17. A | 18. C | 19. A | 20. C |

**Exercise 13.**

1. In the Central Highlands of Viet Nam: Kon Turn, Gia Lai, Dak Lak, Dak Nong and Lam Dong.

2. It is held annually.

3. They give gong performances, highlight the gong culture of their own province in the Gong Festival.

4. Yes, it is.

**Exercise 14.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D |

**Exercise 15.**

1. It is an engagement ceremony.

2. It is a family member having a happy life and a high-ranking position in the family.

3. It is prepared by the family of fiancé.

4. Because in Viet Nam, odd numbers are thought to bring luck to the couple.

5. It occurs in front of the ancestor altar.

**Exercise 16.**

1. Most families meet to exchange gifts and have a traditional meal.

2. Homes are decorated with the apricot blossom, peach blossom, and kumquat.

3. Children are encouraged not to fight or cry during Tet.

4. Many families plant a new year's tree in front of the house.

5. After the family meal, many Vietnamese people attend the local pagoda to worship ancestors.

6. The Glastonbury Festival is an exciting music festival.

7. Vietnamese people hope that the first person to enter their house is generous and kind-hearted.

8. Before the festival, people prepare to decorate their houses with colorful flowers.

9. The Vu Lan Festival takes place on the 15th day of the seventh lunar month.

10. I am looking forward to seeing the elephant race festival in Dak Lak.

11. You shouldn't sweep the house on the first day of Tet.

12. I am interested in learning about other cultures.

**Exercise 17.**

1. We wish our mom both health and longevity!

2. He was released after being questioned by the police yesterday.

3. He prays for luck and happiness.

4. The man is a monk from Emei Mountain.

5. They make sacrificial offerings to the gods.

6. The ornamental tree in our front yard is growing rapidly.

7. Martial arts originated in the East.

8. Young rice cake is a specialty in this area.

9. You should learn about Vietnamese table manners.

10. We’re having/ We will have a family reunion next week.

**UNIT 6: LIFESTYLES**

**Exercise 1.**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. bracelet | 2. prawn | 3. broccoli | 4. pray |
| 5. apricot | 6. bread | 7. president | 8. brother |

**Exercise 2.**

1. Gold and silver are precious metals.

2. The bank has many branches all over the country.

3. He never talks about his private life with anybody at work.

4. How many brothers and sisters do you have?

5. The new television series was an expensive project.

6. I spend two hours every day browsing the Web.

7. She'll teach us how to play English pronunciation games.

8. I have some bread and glass of milk for breakfast.

**Exercise 3.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. affordable | 2. livable |
| 3. cosmopolitan | 4. downtown |
| 5. populous | 6. historic |
| 7. polluted | 8. delicious |
| 9. annoying | 10. charming |

**Exercise 4.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. experience | 2. independent |
| 3. maintain | 4. nomadic |
| 5. revive | 6. attractions |
| 7. reliable | 8. multicultural |
| 9. fashionable | 10. affordable |

**Exercise 5.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. especially | 2. natural |
| 3. picturesque | 4. attraction |
| 5. popular | 6. busiest |
| 7. delightful | 8. dynamic |
| 9. flowing | 10. ideal |

**Exercise 6.**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. A | 4. C | 5. C |
| 6. A | 7. B | 8. B | 9. B | 10. B |

**Exercise 7.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. I'll lend | 2. we're going to buy |
| 3. I'll give | 4. We're going to have |
| 5. is he going to | 6. You won't like |
| 7. they'll like | 8. is going to leave |

**Exercise 8.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. will be | 2. are going to get |
| 3. will like | 4. is going to have |
| 5. will arrive | 6. will help |
| 7. will buy | 8. is going to throw |
| 9. are going to fly | 10. is going to rain |

**Exercise 9.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. the weather is - we will drive | 7. I get -1 will go |
| 2. she sends - they will receive | 8. I will buy - it doesn't cost |
| 3. Fred will be - Jack arrives | 9. You will arrive - you catch |
| 4. I will come - I have | 10. I will go - I don't feel |
| 5. she doesn't pass - she won't get | 11. they win - they will be |
| 6. You will learn - you take | 12. it rains, won't go |

**Exercise 10.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. send - will come | 6. will answer - has |
| 2. won't understand - whisper | 7. wears - don't stay |
| 3. won't survive - don’t take | 8. touch - won't scream |
| 4. press - will save | 9. will forget - don’t phone |
| 5. will cross - fly | 10. will remember - give |

**Exercise 11a.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. study - will improve | 6. will find - keeps |
| 2. will go - gets | 7. feel - take |
| 3. doesn't call - will leave | 8. don't tell - will keep |
| 4. rings - will you answer | 9. Will you let - promise |
| 5. will you do - don't find | 10. will eat - feels |

**Exercise 11b.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| 1. study, will pass | 2. shines, will walk |
| 3. has, will see | 4. come, will be |
| 5. earns, will fly | 6. travel, will visit |
| 7. wear, will slip | 8. forgets, will give |
| 9. go, will listen | 10. wait, will ask |

**Exercise 12a.**

1. B (came => comes)

2. D (could ask => can ask)

3. D (couldn' t continue => can' t continue)

4. B (will phone => phones)

5. D (didn't solve => don't solve)

**Exercise 12b.**

1. Unless they practise a lot, they will lose the game.

2. Unless I go now, I'll miss the train.

3. Unless she answers the phone, leave her a message.

4. Unless you pay the bill, I'll call the police.

5. Unless he works hard, he won't pass the examination.

**Exercise 13.**

1. If you turn off all the lights, you will not pay more money.

2. If she wears warm clothes, she will not have a cold.

3. If you are careful, you will not have an accident.

4. If you phone your parents, you will not have a trouble.

5. If she whispers, no one will know what she is saying.

6. If you stay here, you will feel safe.

7. If you pay the electricity bill today, your electricity will not be cut off.

8. If you stop smoking, your cough will not be worse.

9. If we use less fossil fuel, they will not run out soon.

10. If it stops raining today, we will not be faced with a serious flood.

11. If you do morning exercises regularly, your body will be fitter.

12. If we don't use renewable energy, we will have nothing for the future generation.

13. If we don't reduce the use of non-renewable energy, the climate will not change.

14. If you lock all the doors, no one can break into your house.

15. If we stop hunting polar bears, they will not become extinct in the near future.

**Exercise 14.**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. D | 4. C | 5. A | 6. D |

**Exercise 15.**

1. Toronto is in Canada.

2. Greater Toronto Area has a population of more than 5 million.

3. Its wide range of cultures, languages, food and arts makes Toronto proud of itself.

4. One of the first things in Toronto that appeal to tourists is its citizen's friendliness.

5. Toronto's highly artistic culture and fascinating museums proudly display the country's history.

6. Toronto's climate is partially moderated.

7. Summertime is the festival time in Toronto.

8. The city greets more than one million visitors at the Caribana festival.

**Exercise 16.**

1. Unless you do this now, you will regret it.

2. I will feel bored unless my best friend comes to the party with me.

3. We won't talk to her unless she apologizes.

4. The baby will cry louder unless they give him some toys.

5. Unless she promises to come back home early, her father won't let her go.

6. Unless we buy a good map, we will be lost.

7. Unless Mary has enough money, she won't buy that car.

8. You can't have many job opportunities unless you have an IELTS degree.

9. Unless you eat less, you can't lose weight.

10. Unless he speaks English well, he can't take part in this English contest.

**Exercise 17.**

1. If we don't go shopping soon, we will be late.

2. If Sarah isn't ready by 8 a.m., I will go without her.

3. If you send your mother this letter, it will come to her tomorrow.

4. She will get the job if she does well in the interview.

5. They won't miss the flight if they are in a hurry.

6. He will learn quickly if he practices frequently.

7. If it rains, they will postpone the match.

8. You won’t be able to sleep if you watch this horror movie.

9. I will go shopping with my mother if I have time.

10. If you are hungry, eat something.